The Essence of New Concept English

精选·精讲·精练

新概念英语精华60篇

郑[illegible] 编

- 一卷在手，统览英语语法
- 遴选佳作，汇集重要概念
- 两年课程，四月即可学成

中国科学技术大学出版社

1992·合肥

心灵独白(代序)

每当我走进教室，打开《新概念英语》开始讲课时，内心充满着矛盾：要想讲得集中一点仔细一点，时间不允许；如果一次教二、三课，走马看花，又感到对不起学生。

由于《新概念英语》篇幅太多，教师象赶任务似地不断地讲，唯恐讲不完，学生则不停地记，唯恐跟不上，日复一日，这种矛盾始终得不到解决。这就是在我国从事《新概念英语》第二、三两册教学工作中所出现的问题——一个难以解决的问题。

我常常这样想：第二、三两册非四个学期才能顺利学完吗？处在当前知识爆炸的信息时代，对于社会上利用有限的业余时间学习基础英语的广大青年来说，时间问题不能不说是一个严峻的问题。《新概念英语》基本上是基础英语的范本，如果打基础一打就是二、三年，我看所花时间是长了些。

近几年来，我一直在捉摸着：能不能在短期内学完《新概念英语》第二、三两册的精华所在呢？为什么不能把两年的教学时间浓缩为一学期呢？为什么非要

打上一个多小时的全套太极拳而不能来一个简化的普及式太极拳呢？一种强烈的愿望促使我编就《新概念英语精华60篇》。我的目标是：要一卷在手，统览英语语法；要遴选佳作，汇集重要概念；要两年课程，四月即可学成。要篇篇精选、精讲、精练。一周四个学时，只要学四课左右就可以了。这四课要扎扎实实学好，掌握好，比学十四课都有用。

这样做有必要吗？注意到：第二册有96课，三分之一以上属于复习课；第三册有60课，只有前20课属于基础英语，后40课纯属中级泛读材料；至于第四册，其中绝大部分文章完全可以用更新、更简洁、更实用的现代英语代替它。第四册有些内容即使在英国，也不是一般人所能领略的。因此，最精华的实际上只有第二、三两册中六、七十篇课文。至于其它篇章中的重要的常用的句型及表达法当然也有，我把这部分另编在"《新概念英语》第2，3册重要句型及表达法精选30例"，以作为本书的第三部分内容。

这样，本书精华纷呈，金玉满堂。既能作为教材授课，不至篇幅过多而开快车，又能作为自学材料而免除长年累月的案头劳顿之苦。国情、时间、内容、方法，是我所不得不考虑的四大要素，这也是我的心灵独白，多年执鞭，甘苦自

知，决无妄言。

本书是一项基础工程，也是取《新概念英语》之精华并加以重点吸收的一次社会实践。希望广大读者在有限的时间内取得学好英语所必需的基础知识。

郑 孝 通

1991年12月1日

于中国科学技术大学

目　次

I．基础语法巡礼

1　*Breakfast or Lunch*

早饭还是午饭？

I never ***get up*** early on Sundays. I ***am coming*** to see you.

本课重点　一般现在式及现在进行式的用法及内涵（I）

It was Sunday. I never get up early on Sundays. I sometimes stay in bed until lunch time.

那是一个星期天。每逢星期天我从不早起。我有时要睡到吃午饭的时候才起床。

Last Sunday I got up very late. I looked out of the window. It was dark outside. "What a day!" I thought. "It's raining again."

上星期天，我起得很晚。我向窗外看去，外面天气昏暗。"瞧那鬼天

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第2课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)，第2页。

气！"我想，"又下雨了。"

Just then, the telephone rang. It was aunt Lucy. "I've just arrived by train," she said. "I'm coming to see you."

就在这时，电话铃响了。那是我的姑妈露茜打来的。"我乘火车刚到，"她说道，"我准备来看你。"

"But I'm still having breakfast." I said.

"可是我还在吃早饭呢，"我说。

"What are you doing?" she asked.

"你在干什么？"她问道。

"I'm having breakfast," I repeated.

"我正在吃早饭，"我重复说。

"Dear me," she said. "Do you always get up so late? It's one o'clock!"

"天哪，"她说，"你总是起床这么迟吗？现在是一点钟了！"

【讲解】

1. 一般现在式往往和"从不"，"经常"等副词连用，以表示一种惯常性的动作。这些副词，我们称为频度副词。如：always（总是），sometimes（有时），never（从不），frequently（经常），often（通常），rarely（难得），ever（惯常）等，位置常在动词之前。

   例 1) Do you ***ever*** get up early on Sundays?
   每逢星期天你惯常早起吗？

   2) I ***sometimes*** spend my holidays abroad.
   我有时去国外度假。

   3) He ***rarely*** answers my letters.
   他难得回我的信。

   4) We ***frequently*** have lunch at this restaurant.
   我们经常在这家餐馆吃午饭。

   5) The children ***always*** play football in the street.
   孩子们总是在街道上踢足球。

   6) His friends ***seldom*** visit him.

他的朋友难得看望他。

7) She *occasionally* goes to the theatre.
她偶而去看戏。

8) She *generally* comes to see me on Sundays.
她一般每逢星期天来看我。

9) He *usually* gets up late on Sundays.
他通常每逢星期天都起床很晚。

10) I *often* buy gramophone records.
我时常买留声机唱片。

2. 现在进行式在表达“正在”之外，还可解释为“打算”，“计划”，“要”等。在这方面，我国学生似乎不很习惯甚至根本不知道该如何去使用，他们仅仅只会说 be going to，这在日常英语中是远远不够用的。

例 1) I *am leaving* for Beijing tomorrow.
我打算明天去北京。

2) The train *is leaving in five minutes.*
火车五分钟之后就要离站了。

3) He *is making* a speech at the meeting *tomorrow.*
他计划在明天的会议上发言。

4) *Is* the commitee *meeting this evening*?
今晚委员会打算开会吗？

5) The famous violinist *is playing* in *tonight's* concert.
这位著名的小提琴演奏家要在今晚的音乐会上演出。

【语言材料】

1. *v.* +until

动词用在肯定句后面有 until，这个 until 就是连词(一直到，到…(为止))。

例 I *watched* him *until* he disappeared from sight in the distance.

我看着他直到他在远处消失为止。

2. What a day！可以说天气真糟，也可以说天气真好，要看具体情景而言。但不可说 What a weather！（weather 为不可数名词，不能和 a 连用）

3. just then，指就在那时＝at that moment

4. Look out of. 不能用 see out of，所谓 out of＝away from. look out of the window，是向窗外看去。从屋子里走出来，则是 walk out of the room.

【习题】

( ) 1. He sometimes ________ in bed until lunch time.

a. stay　　b. is staying

c. stays　　d. staying

( ) 2. He stayed in bed until lunch time. He ________ get up until lunch time.

a. sometimes　　b. didn't

c. likes to　　d. often

( ) 3. "________ did aunt Lucy come?" "By train."

a. When　　b. Where

c. How　　d. By which

( ) 4. She was his aunt, so he was her ________.

a. niece　　b. nephew

c. grandson　　d. son-in-law

( ) 5. Breakfast is the first ________ of the day.

a. meal　　b. dinner

c. lunch　　d. food

(d) 6. Aunt lucy said, "Dear me" because she was ________.

a. angry　　b. frightened

c. tired　　d. surprised

( ) 7. I've just arrived. I ________ by train a moment ago.

a. arrived in　　b. have arrived

c. arrived at here　　d. arrived

( ) 8. "Do his friends ever visit him?" "________."

a. Ever
b. occasionaly
c. Generally did
d. Seldom

( ) 9. What ________ weather!
a. a
b. fairly
c. awful
d. a bad

( ) 10. What bus are the students ________ by?
a. travel
b. take
c. travelling
d. ride

2 *The Best Art Critics**

第一流的艺术评论家

> We ***like*** them in the same way that we ***like*** pretty curtain material.
>
> I'***m hanging*** this picture on the wall.

本课重点 一般现在式及现在进行式,有些动词不用进行式(Ⅱ)

下列动词较少使用-ing 形式,或完全不用。(斜体部分有时用-ing):

appear, appreciate, believe, ***feel***, forget, ***hear***, know, like, look like, notice, remember, resemble, ***see***, think(that), understand

I am an art student and I paint a lot of pictures.

我是一个美术学校中的学生,我画了不少画。

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第二册第 26 课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第 49 页。

Many people pretend that they understand modern art. They always tell you what a picture is "about".

很多人假装懂得现代艺术。他们总是跟你讲某一张画画的"内容"是什么。

Of course, many pictures are not "about" anything. They are just pretty patterns. We like them in the same way that we like pretty curtain material.

当然，有许多画是什么"内容"都扯不上的。它们只不过是一些美丽的图案而已。我们就象喜欢美丽的窗帘料子一样喜欢这些画。

I think that young children often appreciate modern pictures better than anyone else. They notice more.

我认为年青的孩子们欣赏现代绘画的能力比谁都强。他们注意的东西比较多。

My sister is only seven, but she always tells me whether my pictures are good or not. She came into my room yesterday.

我的妹妹年仅七岁，但是她总是告诉我，我画的画是好还是不好。她昨天到我的房间里来了。

"What are you doing?" she asked.

"你在干什么?"她问道。

"I'm hanging this picture on the wall." I answered. "It's a new one. Do you like it?"

"我正在把这幅画挂到墙上去呀。"我回答说，"这是一幅新画，你喜欢吗?"

She looked at it critically for a moment. "It's all right," she said, "but isn't it upside-down?"

她挑剔地看了一会。"挺好的，"她说，"不过，画是不是挂倒了？"

"I looked at it again. She was right! It was!

我又看了一下。她说的不错！画是挂倒了！

【讲解】

1. 不是任何动词都可用进行式，我们只说"Do you like it?"而不说"Are you liking it?"同样，人们常说"I forget his name."却不说"I am forgetting his name."

2. 试看下列句子的正误：

   1) 在我看来你们都错了。

      (正)It ***appears*** to me that you are all mistaken.

      (误)It is appearing to me that you are all mistaken.

   2) 我理解这件事的难处。

      (正)I ***appreciate*** the difficulty.

      (误)I am appreciating the difficulty.

   3) 她不相信任何人告诉她的任何事。

      (正)She doesn't ***believe*** anything that anybody tells him.

      (误)She isn't believing anything that anybody tells him.

   4) 我们感觉到屋子在摇晃。

      (正)We ***feel*** the house shaking.

      (误)We are feeling the house shaking.

   5) 我听说你需要一名秘书。

      (正)I ***hear*** (that) you want a secretary.

      (误)I am hearing you want a secretary.

   6) 他有一只耳朵听觉不灵。

      (正)He ***hears*** badly in one ear.

      (误)He is hearing badly in one ear.

   7) 他们对于"经济"二字一无所知。

      (正)They ***know*** nothing of "economy".

      (误)They aren't knowing anything of "economy".

8）我不喜欢你讲话的那种方式。

（正）I don't ***like*** your way of talking.

（误）I am not liking your way of talking.

9）天看来像要下雨了。

（正）It looks like rain.

（误）It is looking like rain.

10）他注意到世界的变迁。

（正）He ***noticed*** the change in the world.

（误）He is noticing the change in the world.

注：当 notice 后面没有宾语时，可以用 ing，表示“没有注意到”。

例：He disappeared when I was not noticing.

11）我记得整个事情就像昨天发生的一样。

（正）I ***remember*** the whole thing as if it happened yesterday.

（误）I am remembering the whole thing as if it happened yesterday.

12）你明白我的意思吗？

（正）Do you ***see*** what I mean?

（误）Are you seeing what I mean?

注：see 可以用 seeing，往往是说“打算去看”。

例：I'm seeing her tomorrow.

13）约翰长得像他父亲。

（正）John ***resembles*** his father.

（误）John is resembling his father.

14）我想我最好现在得走了。

（正）I ***think*** I'd better be going.

（误）I am thinking I'd better be going.

15）这部影片你觉得怎么样？

（正）What do you ***think*** of the film?

（误）What are you thinking of the film?

16) 我弄不懂你是什么意思?

(正)I don't ***understand*** what you mean.

(误)I am not understanding what you mean.

【语言材料】

1. be about，指画的什么内容，写的什么内容等。但下面的一句话其意思是“忙，干”。

例 What ***are*** you ***about***?

你在忙些什么?

例 I don't understand what this book ***is*** all ***about***.

我看不懂这本书写的什么名堂。

2. 比较级+anyone else(或 any other person)

例 They appreciate modern picture bett***er*** than ***anyone else***. (不可用 anyone，也不可用 any other persons，或 all persons)

3. 介词+the same...that；和…一样(同样)，就像…那样=just as

例 I live ***in the same place that*** you did.

我住在你原来住的地方。

They do it ***in the same way that*** we do now.

他们就像我们现在干的样子在干这件事。

【习题】

I. 判断下列各句之正误(用√，×)

(√) 1. He ***is watching*** television even at this moment.

(√) 2. He ***is*** not ***doing*** his homework even at this moment.

(√) 3. Do you always ***hear*** the train at this time of the night?

(√) 4. She always ***forgets*** my name.

(√) 5. I always ***know*** what you're going to say.

(√) 6. She ***is wearing*** her green dress at this moment.

(×) 7. ***Is*** she ***resembling*** her mother?

( ) 8. I'*m thinking* that John often speaks English faster than any other student.

( ) 9. I don't think she *is* often *rememering* me.

( ) 10. Yes. I *am understanding* you.

Ⅱ. 选择填空：

( ) 1. Could you tell me ________?

a. what is it about

b. what is it all about

c. what about it is

d. what it is all about

( ) 2. Do people pretend that ________ modern art?

a. he understand

b. they are understanding

c. they are appreciating

d. they understand

( ) 3. They like them ________ they like model planes.

a. just the same way

b. just as

c. in same way that

d. in the same ways and

( ) 4. It's upside-down. It isn't ________.

a. the right way up

b. right way upside-down

c. the right way down

d. wrong way up

( ) 5. The writer's sister ________ her brother had made a mistake.

a. was noticed   b. was noticing

c. noticed and   d. noticed that

( ) 6. Do you like my picture? ________.

a. Its a new one   b. It's new one

c. Its one new   d. It's a new one

( ) 7. They notice more. They ________ more.

a. say　　　　b. explain

c. take care　　　　d. observe

(d) 8. She tells me ________ my pictures are good or not.

a. if　　　　b. whther

c. weather　　　　d. until

(　) 9. This curtain material is very good ________.

a. cloth　　　　b. clothing

c. clothes　　　　d. matter

(　)10. Why don't you ________ it on the wall?

a. hung　　　　b. hang

c. hange　　　　d. hanging

3 *Thirteen Equals One**

十三等于一

be always＋*v*-ing＝总是(老是)

本课重点　现在进行式的一种特殊模式(Ⅱ)

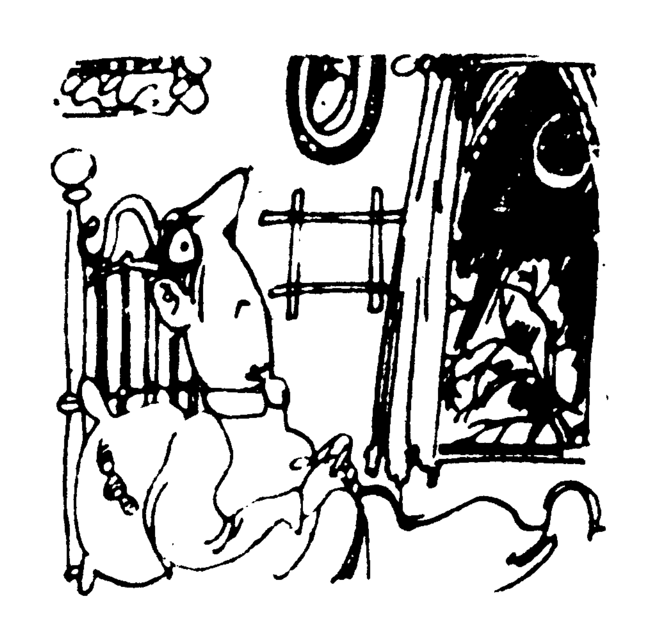
Our vicar ***is always raising*** money for one cause or another, but he has never managed to get enough money to have the church clock repaired. The big clock, which used to strike the hours day and night was damaged during the war and has been silent ever since.

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第3册第2课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(中)第3页。

我们的教区牧师**总是**为了这个或那个理由向人筹款，但是他从来就筹不到足够的钱把教堂的钟修理好。过去日夜报时的那口大钟在战争期间被损坏了，打那时以后，就再也不响了。

One night, however, our vicar woke up with a start: the clock was striking the hours! Looking at his watch, he saw that it was one o'clock, but the bell struck thirteen times before it stopped.



可是，有一天晚上，我们的牧师突然惊醒了过来：这口钟居然报时了！他看看手表，时间是一点钟，可是钟却敲了十三下才停。

Armed with a torch, the vicar went up into the clock tower to see what was going on. In the torchlight, he caught sight of a figure whom he immediately recognized as Bill Wilkins, our local grocer.

手里拿着手电筒，牧师走上钟楼去看看究竟发生了什么事。手电光下，他瞥见了一个人形，他一看就认出这是比尔·威尔金斯，是我们当地的杂货商。

"Whatever ***are*** you ***doing*** up here Bill?" asked the vicar in surprise.

"I'***m trying to*** repair the bell," answered Bill. "I've been coming up here night after night for weeks now. You see, I was hoping to give you a surprise."

"比尔，你究竟在这钟楼上干什么？"牧师惊奇地问道。

"我正在试图修这口钟呢。"比尔答道。"到现在我已好几个星期天天夜里到钟楼上面来。你可要知道，我原来打算要让你大吃一惊的。"

"You certainly did give me a surprise!" said the vicar.

"You've probably woken up everyone in the village as well. Still, I'm glad the bell ***is working*** again."

"你的确使我大吃一惊!"牧师说。"极有可能你还把村子里所有的人都吵醒了。不过,我感到高兴的是这口钟现在又响了。"

"That's the trouble, Vicar," answered Bill. "***It's working*** all right, but I'm afraid that at one o'clock it will strike thirteen times and there's nothing I can do about it."

"We'll get used to that Bill," said the vicar. "Thirteen is not as good as one, but it's better than nothing. Now let's go downstairs and have a cup of tea".

"问题就在这里,牧师,"比尔答道。"钟倒是敲响了,可是在一点钟的时候恐怕会敲十三下,对此,我是无能为力了。"

"比尔,我们会习惯的,"牧师说。"敲十三下不等于敲一下好,不过比不敲要强。好啦,让我们下楼去喝杯茶再说吧。"

【讲解】

现在进行式中有一种特殊模式就是 be always＋*v*-ing。用到这种模式往往表示不耐烦,埋怨,惊奇等情绪。我们把它译作:"总是"。("老是")

例 1. 她总是拿不定主意。

She ***is always changing*** her mind.

＝She changes her mind ***too often.***

2. 她总是告诉我们说她的丈夫有多么聪明。

She tells us how clever her husband is ***too often.***

＝She ***is always telling*** us how clever her husband is.

3. 他总是逗猫玩。

He teases the cat ***very, very often.***

＝He ***is always teasing*** the cat.

4. 他总是弹钢琴。

He plays the piano ***all the time.***

=He ***is always playing*** the piano.

5. 他总是去看电影。

He goes to the pictures ***too much.***

=He ***is always going*** to the pictures.

【语言材料】

1. has managed to 得以顺利地…
2. used to 过去常常
3. ever since 从那时以后
4. woke up 醒来
5. with a start 一惊
6. (be) armed with 拿着
7. recognize ***sb.*** as 认出某某人是…
8. in surprise 惊奇地
9. was hoping to 原来指望…
10. there is nothing one can do about it 对此,(我)无能为力
11. get used to 对…习惯
12. as good as 等于
13. have...repaired 把…修好
14. strike the hours 报时

【习题】

I. 把下列每句话用 be always+*v*-ing 代入:

1. He talks about television programmes ***too much.***

   他老是谈关于电视节目的事。

2. He boasts about his garden ***all the time.***

   他老是吹嘘他的花园。

3. He makes silly remarks ***too often.***

   他老是讲些无聊的话。

4. She rings me up ***very, very often.***

她老是打电话给我。

5. Our car breaks down ***nearly every day.***

我们的汽车几乎天天出毛病。

6. She loses her wallets ***very often.***

她老是丢掉钱包。

Ⅱ. 汉译英：

1. 他老是受到处罚。(punish)
2. 你老是得感冒。(catch a cold, catch colds)
3. 你老是犯错误。(make a mistake, make mistakes)
4. 她老是写信。(letter)
5. 这支钢笔老是漏墨水。(run out)

Ⅲ. 选择填空

( ) 1. At the moment(眼下) she ________ the teacher.

a. listens　　b. listens to

c. is listening　　d. is listening to

(b) 2. He says he ________ on his left leg.

a. does not stand him　　b. is not standing

c. isn't stand　　d. is trying stand

( ) 3. Now he ________ his holiday.

a. thinks for　　b. is thinking for

c. thinks on　　d. is thinking about

( ) 4. She is always buying ________.

a. a new hat　　b. new hat

c. new hats　　d. new clotheses

( ) 5. She is always ________.

a. drinking coffees　　b. drinking waters

c. drinking coffee　　d. eating sweet

( ) 6. They are always ________.

a. going by planes　　b. going in plane

c. going by a plane　　d. going by plane

(a) 7. He is always ________.

a. getting into trouble　　b. getting into troubles

c. borrowing George's moneys d. smoking a cigar

( ) 8. She is always ________.

a. asks for an advice

b. asking for advices

c. asking for advice

d. asking for some advices

( ) 9. He is always complaining(抱怨)about his ________.

a. works b. neighboures

c. work d. clotheses

( )10. He is always going to ________.

a. the London b. the America

c. the Philippines d a doctor

4 *Please Send Me a Card**

请寄给我一张名信片

Last summer, I ***went*** to Italy.

本课重点 简单过去式及相应的时间状语(Ⅰ)

Postcards always spoil my holidays. ***Last summer***, I ***went*** to Italy. I ***visited*** museums and ***sat*** in public gardens. A friendly waiter ***taught*** me a few words of Italian. Then he ***lent*** me a book. I ***read*** a few lines, but I ***did not understand*** a word.

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第3课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第4页。

名信片总是使我过不好假日。去年夏天，我到了意大利。我参观了博物馆并在公园里坐了坐。一位友好的招待员教我几句意大利语。然后他借给我一本书。我看了几行，可我一句话也看不懂。

Every day I ***thought*** about postcards. My holidays ***passed*** quickly, but I ***did not send*** any cards to my friends.

每天我都在考虑名信片的事。我的假期转眼就过去了，可是我什么名信片也没有寄给我的朋友们。

On the last day I ***made*** a big decision. I ***got*** up early and ***bought*** thirty-seven cards. I ***spent*** the whole day in my room, but I ***did not write*** a single card!

到了最后一天我下了很大的决心。我起得很早还买了三十七张名信片。我在房间里花了一整天的时间，可是我连一张名信片也没写成！

【讲解】

简单过去式往往伴有表示过去的时间状语，如 last summer, last year, a minute ago, on the last day 等等。

但并不是所有 last, past 等词都属于表示过去时域的用词，关于这一点，正是英语学习的难点。

请看下列各例：

1. She ***arrived*** safely ***last*** week.
   上周她平安到达了。
2. Do you remember the advice you ***gave*** me ***last*** night?
   你还记得昨晚你向我提出的建议吗？
3. He ________ (not, have) anything to eat for the ***last*** twelve hours.
4. In the ***past*** two years I ________ (see) him little.

上面第 3 题不能用"didn't have"，第 4 题也不能用"saw"，因为这里的 last 和 past 不是讲"过去"，而是表示"以来"。因此第 3 题的意思是"十二个小时**以来**我还没有吃过什么东西。"第 4 题的意思是"两年**来**我很少见着他"。正确的填空应该分别用 hasn't had, have seen.

注意下面的对话：

A：When did he send the letter?

B：
- He has sent it ***yesterday***. （误）
- He sent it ***yesterday***. （正）
- He has ***already*** sent the letter. （正）

A：When did you have breakfast?

B：
- I have had it ten minutes ***ago***. （误）
- I had it ten minutes ***ago***. （正）
- I've ***already*** had it. （正）

【语言材料】

1. every day 作为时间状语要分开写，连在一起的是形容词，作"每日的，日常的"解，如 Everyday English.
2. pass 的过去式是 passed，不是 past(形容词，介词)
3. a few 是指若干，后面只能跟可数名词，如：a few words, a few lines 等。
4. decision 是决定，是一个可数名词。make a decision 是"决策"，"作出决定"，make a big decision，就是作出一项重大决定，也就是下了很大的决心。
5. a single 是一个习惯用语，不用 single a，后面跟单数名词。这是对"一个"的强调用语。如 in a single day(就这一天里)，a single flower(就这一朵花)，a single sheet of paper(仅只一张纸)，a single room(仅是一个房间)等。
6. "整整一天时间"用 the whole day，不用 all day(作状语)

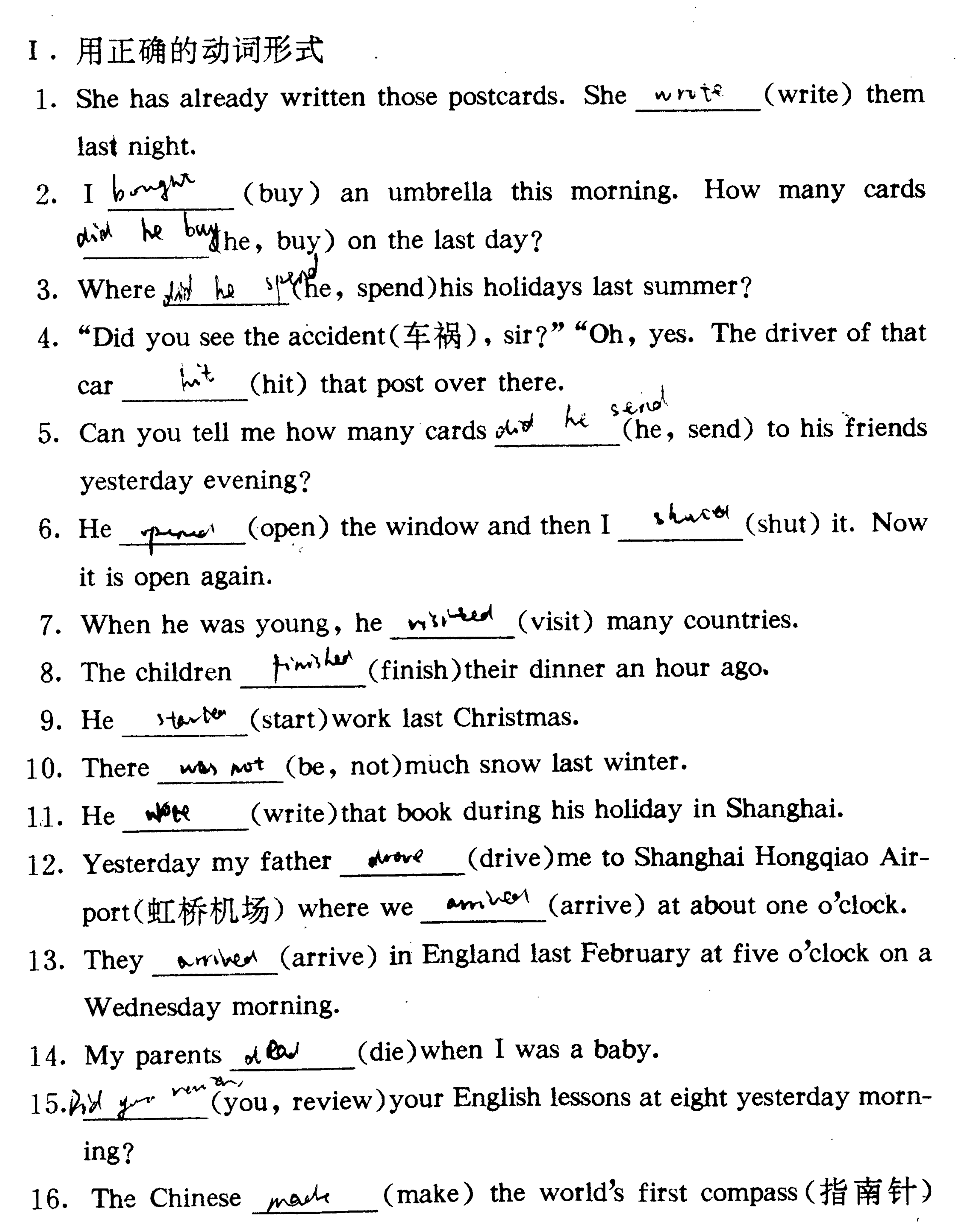
   例　We spent ***the whole day*** looking for you.

我们花了一整天时间在找你。(作 spent 的宾语)

We read English and Russian novels ***all day*** to kill time.

我们整天读英语和俄语小说以消磨时间。(作状语)

【习题】



Ⅰ. 用正确的动词形式

1. She has already written those postcards. She ______ (write) them last night.
2. I ______ (buy) an umbrella this morning. How many cards ______ (he, buy) on the last day?
3. Where ______ (he, spend) his holidays last summer?
4. "Did you see the accident(车祸), sir?" "Oh, yes. The driver of that car ______ (hit) that post over there.
5. Can you tell me how many cards ______ (he, send) to his friends yesterday evening?
6. He ______ (open) the window and then I ______ (shut) it. Now it is open again.
7. When he was young, he ______ (visit) many countries.
8. The children ______ (finish) their dinner an hour ago.
9. He ______ (start) work last Christmas.
10. There ______ (be, not) much snow last winter.
11. He ______ (write) that book during his holiday in Shanghai.
12. Yesterday my father ______ (drive) me to Shanghai Hongqiao Airport(虹桥机场) where we ______ (arrive) at about one o'clock.
13. They ______ (arrive) in England last February at five o'clock on a Wednesday morning.
14. My parents ______ (die) when I was a baby.
15. ______ (you, review) your English lessons at eight yesterday morning?
16. The Chinese ______ (make) the world's first compass(指南针)

long, long ago.

17. His uncle ________(leave) Shanghai for Nanjing the day before y-terday.

18. He ________(pay) a visit to Lu Xun's former residence(故居) the other day.

19. This is the house where George Washington once ________(live).

20. We ________(begin) to study English after we entered the middle school.

Ⅱ. 选择填空

( ) 1. We stayed at home ________ yesterday because it rained heavily.

a. whole day　　b. the whole days

c. all day　　d. the all day

( ) 2. Then he slowly walked ________ the house.

a. passed　　b. pass

c. past　　d. pasted

( ) 3. I ________ a sleepless night in the old house.

a. past　　b. passed

c. passet　　d. pasted

( ) 4. Have you ________ room for tonight and tomorrow night with telephone and shower? (淋浴)

a. single a　　b. a single

c. single　　d. only

( ) 5. Could I have ________ words with you, Mr. Henry?

a. some of　　b. few

c. lot of　　d. a few

( ) 6. People like watching TV because it is about their ________ life.

a. holidays　　b. friendly

c. every day　　d. everyday

( ) 7. He looked more like his father ________.

a. the whole day　　b. all day
c. everyday　　d. every day

( ) 8. I got up early and bought thirty-seven cards ________ my friend, John.
a. to　　b. for
c. with　　d. and for

( ) 9. Will you please ________(递) me the book?
a. past　　b. pass
c. to pass　　d. passing

( ) 10. Why don't you ________ him some money?
a. borrow　　b. give to
c. lent　　d. lend

( ) 11. She gave me ________.
a. a smile friendly　　b. friendly smile
c. smiles very friendly　　d. a friendly smile

( ) 12. Yesterday afternoon the heavy rain ________ the flowers in my garden.
a. visited to　　b. spoited
c. spoilt　　d. spent

( ) 13. The meat ________ when we left it out overnight.
a. spoiled　　b. spoils
c. spoilted　　d. spoited

( ) 14. At first I ________ how ill she was.
a. understood not　　b. not understood
c. was not understood　　d. did not understand

( ) 15. I often ________ what you said last time I saw you.
a. spend　　b. visit
c. thought about　　d. made a big decision

( ) 16. He was a friendly waiter. He spoke to him ________.
a. friendly enough　　b. as friends
c. like good friends　　d. in a friendly way

( ) 17. He was in his room all day. He spent ________ in his room.

a. whole day　　b. the whole day

c. a whole day　　d. whole days

( )18. He made a big decision. He ________.

a. made up mind　　b. made his up mind

c. made up his mind　　d. changed his mind

( )19. The waiter lent him a book. He ________ a book from the waiter.

a. borrowed　　b. took

c. lended　　d. lent

( )20. The man ________ a few lines, but he didn't understand a word.

a. looked on　　b. saw at

c. readed　　d. read

5 *SOS*[*]

呼救信号

> It *was* the middle of winter. Snow *lay* thick on the ground.

本课重点　简单过去式及相应的时间状语(Ⅱ)

When a light passenger plane *flew* off course ***some time ago***, it ***crashed*** in the mountains and its pilot ***was killed.***

不久前,当一架轻型客机飞离航线时,它坠毁在山区里,飞行员遇难

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第75课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第142页。

丧生。

The only passengers, a young woman and her two baby daughters, ***were unhurt***. It ***was*** the middle of winter. Snow ***lay*** thick on the ground. The woman ***knew*** that the nearest village ***was*** miles away.

机上仅有的乘客，一位年轻妇女和她的两个女婴儿却没有受伤。时值隆冬寒天。地上积了厚厚的雪。这位妇女知道最近的村庄也在数英里之外。

When it ***grew*** dark, she ***turned*** a suit-case into a bed and ***put*** the children inside it, covering them with all the clothes she ***could*** find. During the night, it ***got*** terribly cold. The woman ***kept*** as near as she ***could*** to the children and even ***tried*** to get into the case herself, but it ***was*** too small.

天慢慢黑下来了，她把手提箱当作床，将孩子们放在箱里，把她能弄到的所有的衣服给孩子们盖上。到了夜里，天气变得非常冷。这位妇女尽可能紧挨着孩子们，甚至她自己都想钻进箱子里去，但是箱子太小了。

Early next morning, she ***heard*** planes passing overhead and ***wondered*** how she ***could*** send a signal. Then she ***had*** an idea. She ***stamped*** out the letters "SOS" in the snow.

第二天一清早，她听到飞机一架架地从头上飞过，便寻思，怎样才能发出求救信号。后来，她想出了一个主意。她用脚在雪地上踩出了"SOS"这三个字母。

Fortunately, a pilot ***saw*** the signal and ***sent*** a message by radio to the nearest town. ***It was not long before*** a helicopter ***arrived*** on the scene to rescue the survivors of the plane

crash.

幸运的是，一位飞行员看到了信号，便用无线电向最近的城镇发了电报。不久，一架直升飞机飞到出事地点来搭救飞机失事的幸存者。

【讲解】

1. 注意本课的时间状语：some time ago，it was not long before，以衬托过去时间。
2. 英语中的"受伤"、"未受伤"都用表语，而不用动词，所以须用 be hurt，be unhurt 。

【语言材料】

1. flew off 飞离，off＝away from，所以不能写成 flew off from course.
2. lay thick 这个 lay 是连系动词＝was thick.
3. be miles away 这个 away＝distant(远).
4. kept near 靠紧，紧挨
5. heard…passing 这个 passing 是现在分词作为 heard 后面宾语的补语，表示正在飞过。若用 pass，动词原形，则表示飞过的过程已结束。
6. It was not long before 习惯用语，指，过去时间的"不久"。

句型如下：

It was not long before＋主＋动词简单过去式。

例：***It wasn't long before*** he ***told*** us about this affair.
不久，他告诉我们有关这件事的情况.

比较：***It was a long time before*** he ***got*** to sleep again.
过了很长时间之后，他才再次入睡。

7. on the scene 到现场，这里指出事地点
8. plane crash 飞机失事

【习题】

选择填空

( ) 1. She heard planes ________ overhead.

a. pass　　b. to pass

c. in passing　　d. to passing

( ) 2. It got terribly cold, the cold was ________.

a. bad　　b. too much

c. catching　　d. frightful

( ) 3. It was not long before a helicopter arrived.

It arrived ________.

a. much later　　b. soon afterwards

c. after　　d. behind the time

( ) 4. Did the snow ________ thick on the ground?

a. lay　　b. lie

c. laid　　d. layed

( ) 5. She was a young woman. The woman was ________

a. young　　b. youth

c. a youth　　d. youthing

( ) 6. It was too small. It wasn't ________.

a. big enough　　b. enough big

c. enough large　　d. rather large

( ) 7. The plane flew off course. =The plane ________

a. flew in the right direction

b. didn't fly in the right direction

c. was a light passenger plane

d. crashed soon afterwards

( ) 8. The survivors were ________.

a. lively　　b. live　　c. in life　　d. alive

( ) 9. "Did she keep near the children?"

"Yes, she ________ near the children."

a. kept　　b. keeped　　c. kept as　　d. did

( ) 10. A helicopter arrived soon afterwards. A helicopter arrived ________.

a. it was not long before   b. before long
c. much later   d. long before

6 *A Wet Night**

雨　夜

After a wonderful meal, they ***told*** stories and ***sang*** songs by the camp fire.

本课重点　简单过去式及相应的时间状语(Ⅲ)

Late in the afternoon, the boys ***put*** up their tent in the middle of a field. As soon as this ***was done***, they ***cooked*** a meal over an open fire. They ***were*** all hungry and the food ***smelt*** good.

傍晚,孩子们在田间搭起了帐篷。一搭好帐蓬,他们就在篝火上煮饭了。他们都饿了,饭菜闻起来真香。

After a wonderful meal, they ***told*** stories and ***sang*** songs by the camp fire. But some time later it ***began*** to rain. The boys ***felt*** tired so they ***put*** out the fire and ***crept*** into their tent.

一顿美餐之后,他们就在营火边上讲故事、唱歌。但是过了一会儿,天开始下起雨来了。孩子们感到疲劳了,所以他们熄灭了火,爬进了他们的帐篷。

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第27课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第50页。

Their sleeping-bags ***were*** warm and comfortable, so they all ***slept*** soundly. In the middle of the night, two boys ***woke*** up and ***began*** shouting. The tent ***was*** full of water!

他们的睡袋既暖和又舒适，所以他们都睡得很熟。到了半夜里，有两个孩子醒了过来并大声喊起来。原来帐篷里尽是水！

They all ***leapt*** out of their sleeping-bags and ***hurried*** outside. It ***was*** raining heavily and they ***found*** that a stream had formed in the field. The stream ***wound*** its way across the field and then ***flowed*** right under their tent!

他们都从睡袋里出来，急忙往外跑。雨正倾盆而下，他们发现在田里已形成一条小溪。这条小溪弯弯曲曲地穿过这块田地而且恰好就在他们的帐篷下面流过去。

【讲解】

1. after＋名词——→跟动词简单过去式 是本课的一个重点句型。

例 1. ***After*** serious consideration, they ***decided*** to go to England.

经过认真的考虑之后，他们决定去英国。

2. ***After*** his long illness, he ***was*** still weak.

长期患病之后，他仍然很虚弱。

3. Just ***after*** seven the rain ***began*** to fall.

就在七点钟之后，雨开始下起来了。

4. ***After*** midnight, the party ***broke*** up.

午夜之后，聚会就散了。

2. 本课的时间状语有以下几种形式：

1) late in the afternoon

2) as soon as

3) after＋名词

4) in the middle of the night

5) but some time later

3. as soon as 也常常用在简单过去式中。表示过去两种动作的紧接发生。

例： 1) He ***started as soon as*** he ***received*** the news.

他一收到消息就开始干起来。

2) ***As soon as*** I ***got*** home she ***went*** out.

我一到家，她就出去了。

3) ***As soon as*** he ***saw*** the tiger he ***fled.***

他一看到这只老虎他就逃走了。

4) ***As soon as*** the storm ***started***, the boat ***upset.***

暴风雨一来船就倾覆了。

5) He ***left*** for home yesterday ***as soon as*** he ***received*** that letter.

他昨天一收到那封信就立即回家去了。

【语言材料】

1. late in the afternoon. 但 late at night 不写 late in the night.

2. put up 支撑起

3. smell＋形容词 闻起来…

4. feel tired feel＝be. the boys felt tired＝the boys were tired.

5. put out 扑灭 熄灭

6. sleep soundly 睡得很香(熟)

对比下列结构：

They slept soundly. (sound)
They slept deeply.
They were sound asleep.
They were fast asleep.

7. be full of　指“满是”(状态)
8. wound its way　弯弯曲曲(wound 是 wind 的过去式)
9. right under their tent　right 是“正好”,“就在”,这是副词,强调后面的介词短词 ***under their tent***, 因此称为强势介词短语。

例 put it ***right in the middle.***

就把它放在正中。

He was standing ***right beside me.***

他就站在我的旁边。

There is the house, ***right in front of you.***

房子就在那里,正好在你的前面。

10. 关于 all 的位置,请注意:
    1) They were *all* hungry...

    (all 在 be 后面)

    2) They *all* leapt out of their sleeping-bags...

    (all 在动词前面)

11. fire 一般被认为是个不可数名词,前面不可有“a”,但“炉火”为可数名词,可以说 an open fire.

【习题】

Ⅰ. 选择填空

(　) 1. “Did they sleep soundly?”“Yes, they were ________ asleep.”

a. soundly　　b. deeply

c. fastly　　d. sound

(　) 2. “Didn't they creep into their tent?”“________”.

a. No, they crept into their tent.

b. Yes, they crept into their tent.

( ) 3. Where did they ________?

a. put their tent up
b. put up it
c. had their tent put up
d. have their tent to put up

( ) 4. They cooked a meal because ________.

a. they were hungry
b. they were hungary
c. they feel hungry
d. they had hunger

( ) 5. They sang songs ________ the camp.

a. besides
b. near
c. at
d. close

( ) 6. They put out the camp fire. The fire wasn't ________.

a. on
b. alight
c. on fire
d. burnt

( ) 7. As soon as they ________ this, they cooked a meal over an open fire.

a. was done
b. did
c. were done
d. had been done

( ) 8. The boys went to bed because ________.

a. it was late in night
b. they feel tired
c. they sang songs
d. it began to rain

( ) 9. Mary came in as soon as he ________ the radio.

a. turned on
b. sit beside
c. find
d. shut

( )10. I am finding out(我逐渐觉得)that some of them ________.

a. all are wrong
b. are all wrong
c. all wrong
d. are both wrong

7 *Too Late*

失之交臂

> ***While*** two detectives ***were keeping*** guard at the door, two others ***opened*** the parcel.

> ...Some of the detectives ***were waiting*** inside the main building ***while*** others ***were waiting*** on the airfield.

本课重点 过去进行式及其相应句型(Ⅰ)

The plane was late and detectives ***were waiting*** at the airport all morning. They ***were expecting*** a valuable parcel of diamonds from South Africa.

飞机晚点了,而侦探们却在机场上等了整整一个上午。他们正在等候来自南非的一包贵重的钻石。

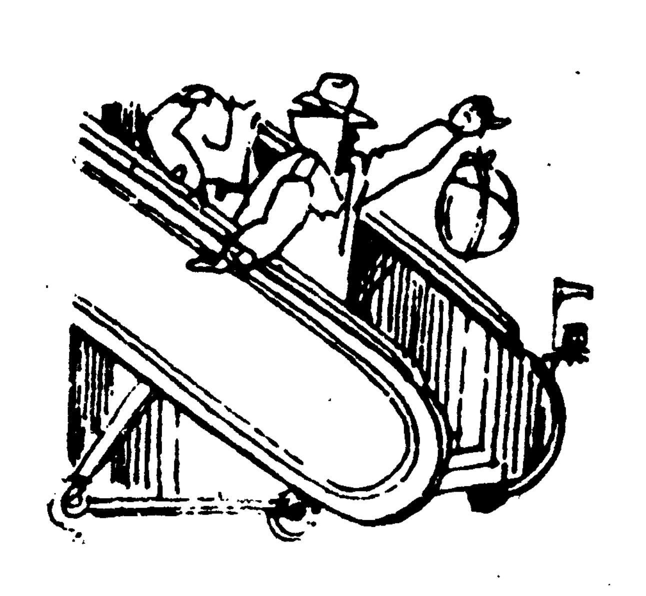
A few hours earlier, someone had told the police that thieves would try to steal the diamonds. When the plane arrived, some of the detectives ***were waiting*** inside the main building while others ***were waiting*** on the airfield.

几小时之前,有人曾对警察说小偷想偷这些钻石。当飞机到达时,有

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第 2 册第 7 课.
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第 12 页.

几个侦探在主楼里面等着，而另外几个侦探则在机场守候。



Two men took the parcel off the plane and carried it into the Customs House. While two detectives ***were keeping*** guard at the door, two others opened the parcel. To their surprise, the precious parcel was full of stones and sand!

有两个人拿着包走下飞机并把包拎进海关大楼。就在这时，两个侦探在大门口警戒，另外两个侦探就把包打开。使他们大惑不解的是，这价值连城的包里面竟满是石头和沙子。

【讲解】

本课提出两个重要的句型，与过去进行式的使用有密切关系。
第一个句型是：

（过去进行式）←while→（过去进行式）

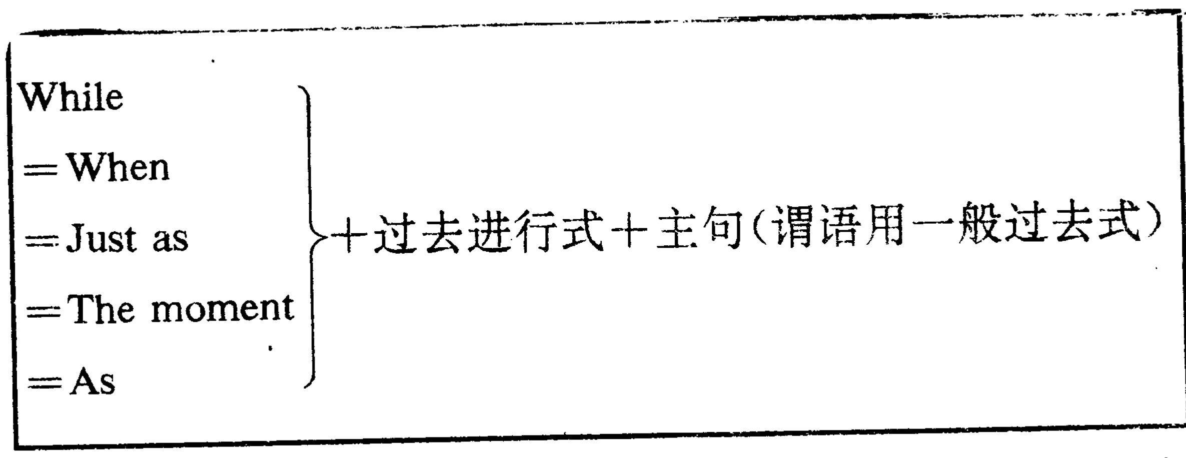
例	…Some of the detectives ***were waiting*** inside the main building	while	others ***were waiting*** on the airfield.

下面再看有关例句：

Alice ***was reading while*** her brother ***was listening to*** the radio.

艾丽斯正在读书而她的兄弟正在听广播。

第二个句型：



While
= When
= Just as
= The moment
= As

} + 过去进行式 + 主句(谓语用一般过去式)

列 ***While*** two detectives ***were keeping guard*** inside the main building, two others ***opened*** the parcel.

再看另一些例子:

1. ***While*** the discussion ***was*** still ***going on***, Henry ***came*** in.

   正当讨论仍在进行时,亨利走了进来。
2. ***Just as*** we ***were having*** a party, the light ***went*** out.

   正当我们在举行聚会时,灯火熄灭了。
3. ***As*** I ***was coming*** here, I ***met*** your father.

   正当我来到这里时,我遇上你的父亲了。
4. ***The moment*** I ***was leaving*** the house, the postman ***arrived.***

   正当我离开屋子之际邮递员上门来了。

【语言材料】

1. they were expecting　expect 这个词用在进行式时,解释为"等待"、"等候"
2. some...others　有几个…,另外几个…,others 不能用 another, the others, the other 来代用
3. keep guard　警戒性的守候
4. to one's surprise　使某人惊奇的是
5. was full of　满是(状态)

   比较:

   The precious parcel ***was full of*** stones and sand.
   The precious parcel ***was filled with*** stones and sand.

(be filled with 就不是状态。是说被人装满了…)

6. sand，若一般指沙子，没有复数形式。若指大片的沙滩，沙地则可以用 sands.

例 They used to play on the ***sands*** when they were young.

当他们年轻时常在沙滩上玩。

7. 我们不能说：What did you do when I telephoned you? 应该说：What were you doing when I telephoned you? 回答时，就要用本课的句型。

例 I was having (my) breakfast when you telephoned me.

【习题】

Ⅰ. 用动词正确形式

1. As I ________(walk) down the street, I met John.
2. She ________(drop) the tray(盘子)just as I ________(speak) to her.
3. Tom ________(work) in the garden while I ________(sit) in the sun.
4. The moment I ________(get) on the bus, I slipped and ________(hurt)my foot.
5. Someone ________(knock) at the door just as I ________(get) into the bath. (浴室)
6. When I ________(water) the garden, it began to rain.
7. What ________(happen) when the plane arrived?
8. What ________(you, do) when I saw you in the library this morning?
9. What ________(be) the parcel full of? It was full of gold and diamonds.
10. To their surprise, the precious parcel ________(have) nothing but stones and sand!

Ⅱ. 选择填空

( ) 1. "________ were detectives waiting?" "At the airport."

a. Where
b. What
c. Why
d. When

( ) 2. Two men took the parcel off the plane. They ________ the plane.

a. took off it
b. took it off
c. took off the parcel
d. took it off from

( ) 3. The parcel was valuable. It was ________.

a. precious
b. value
c. worthy
d. worth

( ) 4. The parcel was full of stones and sand. It was ________ stones and sand.

a. full by
b. full in
c. full with
d. filled with

( ) 5. The detectives were at the airport to ________.

a. prevent a robbery
b. meet a plane
c. watch the building
d. find someone

( ) 6. The detectives were ________ a valuable parcel of diamonds.

a. waiting
b. expecting
c. expecting for
d. awaiting for

( ) 7. Someone had told the police that thieves would try to steal the diamonds. This happened ________ the plane arrived.

a. as soon as
b. before
c. when
d. after

( ) 8. Was the "main" building the ________ building?

a. first
b. greatest
c. best
d. most important

( ) 9. While she was reading the letter, she ________ a knock at the door.

a. listened
b. heard
c. was noticing
d. heard of

( ) 10. Some books are more interesting than ________.

a. the other　　　　b. the others

c. another　　　　d. others

Ⅲ. 中译英译文比较(对的用√,不对的用×)

(正当)在我们等待着陆的时候,一位飞机女乘务员叫我们保持镇静并轻轻地走出飞机。

(　) 1. While we were waiting to land, an air-hostess tell us to keep calm and get off the plane quietly.

(　) 2. While we were waiting to land, an air-hostess told us to keep calm and to get off the plane quietly.

8 *Success Story*

成功者的故事

> He ***was*** still ***smiling when*** the door ***opened*** and his wife ***came*** in.

本课重点　过去进行式及其相应句型(Ⅱ)

Yesterday afternoon Frank Hawkins ***was telling*** me about his experiences as a young man. Frank is now the head of a very large business company, but as a boy he used to work in a small shop. It was his job to repair bicycles and at that time he used to work fourteen hours a day.

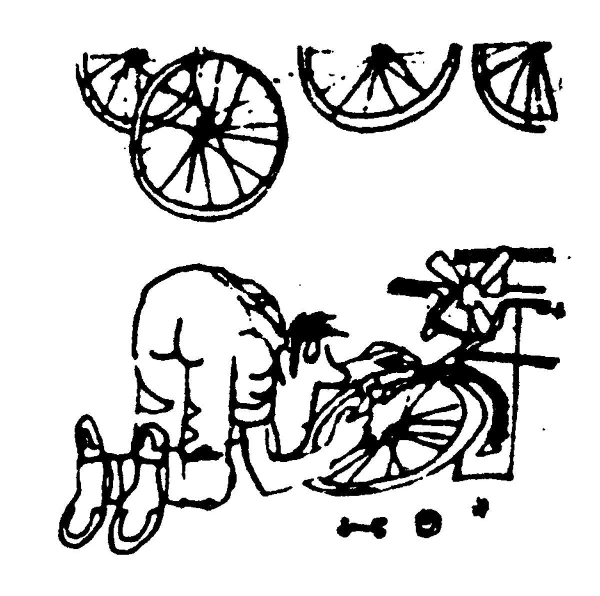
昨天下午,弗兰克·霍金斯跟我说到他年轻时的经历。弗兰克目前是一家规模不小的商业公司的头头,但是在他童年的时候,他曾在一家

选自《新概念英语》第2册第31课。

参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第57页。

小修理铺里工作过。他的工作就是修理自行车，那时，他常常一天要工作十四个小时。

He saved money for years and in 1938 he bought a small workshop of his own. During the war Frank used to make spare parts for aeroplanes. At that time he had two helpers. By the end of the war, the small workshop had become a large factory which employed seven hundred and twenty-eight people.



他积攒了多年的钱，到 1938 年，他买了一间总算属于他自己的小车间。大战期间，弗兰克常常为飞机制造零配件。当时他有两个帮手。到战争结束时，这个小车间已经变成一家雇用了 728 名职工的大工厂了。

Frank smiled when he remembered his hard early years and the long road to success. He was still smiling when the door opened and his wife came in. She wanted him to repair their son's bicycle!

当弗兰克回忆起他早年的艰苦岁月和漫长的成功道路时，他笑了。他还**在**微笑的时候**忽然**门打开了，他的妻子走了进来。她要他给他们儿子修理自行车！

【讲解】

1. 本课所涉及的重要句型与过去进行式有密切关系，关键在于 when 的理解。这个 when 不解释“当”。句型如下：

过去进行式 + when（后面动词用简单过去式）
↑（无逗号）　　↑解释“突然”或“就在此时”

例 1) I *was* just *coming* along to see you *when* I *ran* into Mike.

我**正**要过来看你时**忽然**撞见了迈克。

2. The leader of the party *was examining* the soil near the entrance to the cave *when* the machine *showed* that there was gold under the ground.

探测队队长**正在**洞口检验土壤时**突然**这部机器显示出那块地下有黄金。

对比：(注意 when 的位置)

1) **When** I *was getting* on the bus, I *slipped* and *hurt* my foot.

正当我登上公共汽车的时候，我滑倒并把脚弄伤了。

2) I *was getting* on the bus **when** I *slipped* and *hurt* my foot.

我正登上公共汽车之际**突然**我滑跌倒把脚也弄伤了。

2. 本课出现 used to，指过去常常。这一点大多数人都知道。但是不一定会用"过去常常"而现在"不再"的表达法，这一点，就是新概念英语在语言表达方面所注目的特点之一。

例 I ***used to*** go to work by bus.

我过去常乘公共汽车去上班。

那末现在不再乘公共汽车去上班，其表达方式是：

But I [don't] any more, now. (针对 used to)

＝But I don't go to work by bus any more now.

例 He ***used to be*** a postman a long time ago.

他过去很长时间当过邮递员。

But he [isn't] any more now. (针对 used to be)

＝But he isn't a postman any more now.

used to，有时用 would often，would always，would 代用，特别是一连有好几个 used to 时，就要换用了。(见练习题 Ⅱ)如：

When I was young I ***used to*** have a lot more free time than I do now. I ***used to*** live near my work and ***used to*** get home early. Sometimes I ***used to*** do a bit of gardening or go for a long walk. (译文从略)

你看,这么多 used to,句子就显得词汇单调了,所以要换用。下列句子不能换用,否则会造成误解:

This sort of novel ***used to be*** very popular.

这种小说过去时常受到大家的欢迎。

(言下之意,现在不行了。)

不能代用:This sort of novel ***would*** be very popular.

(这就变成:这种小说将会很吃香。)单独使用 would,如没有表过去时间的状语衬托,这个 would 就是 will 的过去式而已。

【语言材料】

1. as a young man　年轻时,(as a boy 童年时),有时用 when he was young. when he was a boy.
2. his job　指"他的工作,他的事"开始上班要用 begin work,而不能说 begin job.
3. for years　有好几年,多年,没有具体数字的一种表达。
4. of one's own　是属于某人自己的,用作定语,形容前面的那个名词。

   如:各有各的打算. =Each has a plan ***of his own.***

   =Each has his own plan.
5. by the end of 常和 had 连用(指过去时间。如叙说在1905年年底前…就已经…)

   例: We ***had turned out*** 10,000 cars ***by the end of last*** year.

   到去年年底前我们已生产出一万辆小汽车了。

   By the end of the war, the small work-shop ***had become a large factory...***(课文)

6. 728 = seven hundred ***and*** twenty-eight. 若7728, = seven thousand seven hundred ***and*** twenty-eight. 注意 and 的位置。

7. used to 的概念：表示过去常常发生的动作和习惯，侧重同目前不再这样的对比。

used to 的否定式：didn't use to (used not to)

used to 的疑问式：didn't you use to…？(usedn't you to…？)

did there use to be (指过去常有…？)？

used there to be…？

美国人喜欢用 did 作疑问句的助动词：

What did you use to…？

英国人则用 Used you to…？

usedn't = usen't ("d"可以不用)

例 You used to smoke a pipe, {didn't you? / use(d)n't you?}

你过去常用烟斗抽烟，是不是？

【习题】

I. 选择填空

( ) 1. Frank used to work in a small shop. He ________.

a. isn't any more

b. doesn't any more

c. has never done anything else

d. still does

( ) 2. He had a shop of his own. It was ________ shop.

a. his own　　b. he's

c. he's own　　d. he who likes

( ) 3. ________?Their son's.

a. Who's is this bicycle

b. Whose this bicycle is

c. Who's this bicycle is

d. Whose bicycle is this

( ) 4. He was still smiling ________ the door opened and his wife ________.

a. while…entered in　　b. when…entered into

c. while…came in　　d. when suddenly…entered

( ) 5. He used to work fourteen hours a day. He did this ________ day.

a. each　　b. every other

c. everyday　　d. one

( ) 6. Frank used to work in a small shop, ________?

a. did he　　b. used he

c. usen't he　　d. did he used to

( ) 7. I was reading a magazine when the roof (屋顶) ________ in. (坍塌)

a. falled　　b. felled

c. fell　　d. fallen

( ) 8. ________ when it began to snow.

a. They started to go out

b. Mr Henry was pleased with his work

c. Miss Alice was watering in her garden

d. She wanted to ring him up

( ) 9. I used to have a car, but I ________ a car any more.

a. don't　　b. am not have

c. haven't　　d. never

( )10. I used to be a policeman, but ________.

a. I am not any more

b. I am not policeman any more

c. I don't any more

d. I never any more

( )11. There used to be an old pine(松)tree here, ________?

a. used there　　b. didn't there used

c. usedn't there　　d. didn't used there

( )12. Mr. Wilson's small work-shop ________ a large company by the end of 1819.

a. became b. turned into

c. has already become d. had become

( )13. At that time he used to work fourteen hours a day and ________ do a lot of housework.

a. would often b. used also to

c. also would used to d. always to

( )14. Is he on the road ________ ruin (毁灭)?

a. for b. to

c. with d. into

( )15. Einstein (爱因斯坦) was born in Germany in 1879. ________ he liked to ask questions.

a. As a young b. As a boy

c. When was a boy d. When as a boy

Ⅱ. 阅读下列短文，找出 ***used to*** 的代用词

*The Fox Who Went Down to the Valley**

狐狸下溪谷

This is a story about Harquin the Fox.

He lived with his family. Their home was at the top of a hill, and they ***were able to*** live peacefully because the local squire and his game-keeper, who ***used to*** hunt foxes, did not know they were there.

我讲的是狐狸哈昆的故事。(the Fox 作为 Harquin 的同位语)

他和家里人住在一起。他们的家在小山顶上，他们所以**有可能**平安无事地住在那里是因为**过去常常**猎取狐狸的当地的乡绅老爷和他的猎场看守人不知道他们住在那里。

Now Harquin's parents would often warn the young foxes.

---

* 选自《最新英国初级英语》第1册第64页，(中国科学技术大学出版社出版，下同)。

"You can play here on the hill," they would say, "but don't go down to the valley, otherwise the huntsmen will see you and follow you back here and we will no longer be safe."

But Harquin was bored with playing on top of the hill.

He would secretly go down to the valley at night while everyone was asleep.

There were many interesting things.

所以呀，哈昆的双亲总是告诫那些小狐狸要当心。他们对哈昆说："你们就在山上这一带玩。不要到下面的溪谷去，不然的话，猎人就会看到你们然后跟踪到这里，我们就不会再太平了。"

可是哈昆在山顶上玩得厌烦了。(be bored with…)他总是悄悄地当大家睡熟时在夜里溜下溪谷去。

山下有趣的事真是说不完。

9 *Goodbye and Good Luck**

告别和祝愿

> We ***shall*** meet him at the harbour early in the morning.
>
> He ***will*** be away for two months.

本课重点 简单将来式中的sahll，will（Ⅰ）

Our neighbour, Captain Charles Alison, ***will*** sail from Portsmouth tomorrow. We ***shall*** meet him at the harbour early

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第12课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第21页。

in the morning. He ***will be*** in his small boat, ***Topsail.***

我们的邻居，查尔斯·艾利生船长明天将从扑次茅斯起航，我们将一大早在港口和他见面。他将乘坐他的小船“托布赛尔”号。

Topsail is a famous little boat. It has sailed across the Atlantic many times. Captain Alison ***will*** set out at eight o'clock, so we ***shall*** have plenty of time. We ***shall*** see his boat and then we ***shall*** say goodbye to him.

“托布赛尔“号是一艘有名的小船，它已多次横渡大西洋。艾利生船长将在八点出发，所以我们的时间将是很充裕的。我们将参观他的船，然后向他道别。

He ***will*** be away for two months. We are very proud of him. He ***will*** take part in an important race across the Atlantic.

他将外出两个月。我们为他而感到自豪。他将参加横渡大西洋的一次重要比赛。

【讲解】

1. 除了 we，I 使用 shall 以外，其他一律使用 will。但事实上第一人称也常用 will。

例： I will give you a definite answer tomorrow.

明天我将给你一个明确的答复。

“Who will be on duty at six o'clock?”“I will.”

“六点钟谁值班？”“我将值班.”

2. 在主语为第一人称的疑问句中，通常用 shall.

Shall I go with you?

要我同你一起去吗？（见练习 II）

3. 现代英语的趋势，似乎都不是明确地肯定或否定究竟 shall，will 用在什么人称，为了简便起见，都用 you'll，I'll，she'll，they'll，we'll 等简略形式。

【语言材料】

1. early in the morning　一清早
2. the Atlantic　大西洋也可说 the Atlantic ocean，必须用冠词。如：the Pacific Ocean（太平洋），the Indian Ocean（印度洋），Ocean 可以省略，但印度洋不可省略，否则 the Indian 变成印度人或印第安人。
3. set out　出发
4. and then　然后
5. say good bye to *sb.*　向人道别
6. be proud of　为…而自豪
7. take part in　参加（作为参加者一员）
8. race　专指速度比赛

【习题】

Ⅰ. 选择填空

(　) 1. Our neighbour, ________ name is Charles Alison, will sail tomorrow.

a. his　　b. whom his

c. whose　　d. by

(　) 2. His boat, ________ is "Topsail", is famous.

a. Its name　　b. it's name

c. its name　　d. whose name

(　) 3. There will be enough time to see him. We shall have ________ time.

a. very many　　b. a great number of

c. lot of　　d. plenty of

(　) 4. He's our neighbour so he lives ________ us.

a. next door to　　b. near

c. close of　　d. a long way from

(　) 5. He will set out at eight o'clock. That's when ________.

a. the voyage stops　　b. the journey begins

c. the trip comes to an end　　d. the journey ends

(　) 6. He will take part in a race. He will ________ it.

a. be in　　b. take place in

c. be the leader in　　d. win

(　) 7. We shall ________ him.

a. say him goodbye to

b. say goodbye to

c. say hello with

d. tell good luck to

(　) 8. "Topsail" is famous because ________.

a. it is a little boat

b. it is a boat of his own

c. it is a little boat which has sailed across the Atlantic many times.

d. it will set out tomorrow

(　) 9. It has sailed across the Atlantic many times.

It will sail ________ Portsmouth before long.

a. to　　b. for

c. from　　d. across

(　)10. He will be absent from home for two months.

He will ________ for two months.

a. go away　　b. be away

c. leave away　　d. absent

(　)11. ________ proud of him?

a. Do you all　　b. Do all of you

c. Are all you　　d. Are you all

(　)12. The little boat ________.

a. will be in the race across the Atlantic

b. was in the race across the Atlantic

c. will win the race across the Atlantic

d. will set out the day after tommorrow

(　)13. The Atlantic is ________.

a. an ocean　　b. a sea

c. a river　　d. a lake

(　)14. It ________ sailed across the Atlantic.

a. has often　　b. often has

c. has sometime　　d. sometime has

(　)15. ________ we say hello to him or ________ she say good morning to him?

a. shall…will　　b. shall…shall

c. will…will　　d. will…shall

(b)16. George will be here this evening. He'll come ________ his little boat.

a. by　　b. in

c. at　　d. on

(a)17. We shall travel by air. We shall go there ________ a plane.

a. by　　b. on

c. at　　d. in

(c)18. Captain Alison ________ early in the morning.

a. set out　　b. set off

c. leaves off　　d. start his journey

(　)19. They will *leave* very early tomorrow morning. 斜体部分等于:

a. set out　　b. set off

c. left　　d. be setting off

(　)20. The one that goes fastest wins the ________.

a. match　　b. race

c. competition　　d. games

Ⅱ. 阅读下列短文,注意 shall, will 的使用,特别要注意 shall **用在第一人称时的疑问句**是什么内涵。

The Soldier and the Witch

士兵和女巫

John had been to the war and was now on his way back home.

On the road he met an ugly old witch.

"Hello, soldier, "she said. "You're a very fine soldier, I ***can*** see.

Shall I tell you how you can find a lot of money?"

"Yes, please,"said the soldier.

约翰参加过打仗而现在踏上了回家的归途。路上，他碰见一个丑女巫。

“喂，当兵的，”她说。“你是个顶呱呱的大兵，我看得出来。要我告诉你怎样可以得到大批的钱财吗？”

“好吧，请说吧，”士兵说。

"Do you see that big, old tree over there?"said the ugly old witch.

" It's quite hollow. Climb up to the top, then you ***can*** get down inside, into a cave.

You ***will*** find lots of money there. "

“你看到那边那棵古老的大树了吗？”丑女巫说。“那棵树里面都空了。爬到树顶上，你就能进到里面去，然后钻进一个洞穴里。在那里你可以找到大笔的钱。”

---

* 节选自《最新英国初级英语》第1册第17页

10 *Across the Channel**

横渡英吉利海峡

be going to, will be+V-ing(会), intend to

本课重点 简单将来式的几种表达法(Ⅱ)

Erna Hart ***is going to*** swim across the English Channel tomorrow. She ***is going to*** set out from the French coast at five o'clock in the morning. Erna is only fourteen years old and she hopes to set up a new world record. She is a strong swimmer and many people feel that she is sure to succeed.

欧娜·哈特明天将游渡英吉利海峡。早晨五点她将从法国海岸出发。欧娜只有十四岁而她想创立一项新的世界记录。她是一个身体健壮的游泳运动员,许多人认为她定能成功。

Erna's father ***will*** set out with her in a small boat. Mr Hart has trained his daughter for years. Tomorrow he ***will be***

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第36课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第68页。

watching her anxiously as she swims the long distance to England. Erna ***intends to*** take short rests every two hours. She will have something to drink but she will not eat any solid food.

欧娜的父亲将乘小船与她一起出发。哈特先生已训练他女儿有多年了。明天，他将以焦急的心情观看他女儿长距离地游到英国。欧娜打算每隔两小时休息一小会。她将喝些饮料，但她将不吃任何硬的食物。

Most of Erna's school friends ***will be waiting*** for her on the English coast. Among them will be Erna's mother, who swam the Channel herself when she was a girl.

欧娜大多数同学将会在英国海岸上等候她。在等候的人们中，将有欧娜的母亲。她母亲还是一个姑娘时，她自己就游泳横渡了英吉利海峡。

【讲解】

1. 本课 be going to 是人所共知的一种表达形式。intend to＝be going to 表示“打算”。这里比较陌生的恐怕就是 will be＋V-ing 这种形式了。

“会”＝will be＋V-ing.（这是第一种内涵）

例 1)（本课）Tomorrow he ***will be watching*** her anxiously as she...

2)（本课）Most of Erna's school friends ***will be waiting*** for her...

3) ***Will*** you ***be coming*** to see me tomorrow?
明天你会来看我吗？

4) I must go; the students will be waiting for me.
我必须走了；学生们会等我的。

2. | intend to＝be going to 要，打算 |
|---|

肯定句 { We ***intend to*** leave at six o'clock.
我们打算在六点钟离开。
=We ***are going to*** leave at six o'clock.

疑问句 { What ***are*** you ***going to*** do today?
今天你打算干什么?
=What ***do*** you ***intend to*** do today?

否定句 { She ***is not going to*** look for a new job.
她不打算去找一个新的职业。
=She ***doesn't intend to*** look for a new job.

【语言材料】

1. set out　出发(往往同 will, be going to 连用。set off 也是出发,在概念上是"已出发",所以不在 will, be going to 后面使用)
2. hope to　希望
3. set up a world record　创世界纪录
4. be sure to　肯定;完全有把握
5. take short rests　作时间短暂的休息
6. most of　大部分的
7. when she was a girl=as a girl

【习题】

Ⅰ. 照下列模式回答问题:

A: Do you think he ***intends to*** sell his car? B: He certainly does. He***'s going to*** sell it tomorrow.

1. Do you think he intends to ask for an explanation?

→

2. Do you think they intend to leave?

→

3. Do you think she intends to write to him?

→

4. Do you think they intend to move to a new house?

→

5. Do you think they intend to persuade(说服)him?

→

Ⅱ. 选择填空

(b) 1. He will be watching her anxiously ________ she swims the long distance to England.

a. during b. while

c. meanwhile d. though

(b) 2. She is sure to succeed. Many people feel sure ________ it.

a. for b. of

c. to d. in

( ) 3. She'll take short rests every two hours. She will ________ every two hours.

a. stay b. remain

c. relax d. sleep

( ) 4. He'll be watching anxiously. He'll feel ________.

a. thoughtful b. unhappy

c. sad d. worried

( ) 5. ________ does she intend to take short rests? Every two hours.

a. Since when b. How often

c. How much d. How long

( ) 6. Erna's friends will be on the coat. That's where ________ of them will be.

a. the more b. most

c. the most d. more

( ) 7. Erna's mother will be ________ the crowd.

a. between b. around

c. among d. beside

( ) 8. Mr Hart has trained her. He's her ________.

a. trainee b. leader

c. guide d. instructor

( ) 9. Erna hopes to ________ a new world record.

a. make b. build

c. set out d. establish

( ) 10. She is sure to succeed. She's sure to be ________.

a. successful b. success

c. succession d. succeeding

( ) 11. "Is she going to set out from the French coast?"

"Oh, yes. She certainly ________. She intends to set out from the French coast."

a. does b. is

c. do d. intend to

( ) 12. "Does she intend to swim across the Channel?"

"She certainly ________. She is going to swim across it."

a. is b. does

c. will intend d. will intend to

( ) 13. She will have something to drink ________ solid food.

a. besides b. beside

c. except d. but besides

( ) 14. I must be going now, you see, my wife ________ me anxiously at home.

a. is going to wait b. is going to wait for

c. intends to wait d. will be waiting for

( ) 15. Erna is only fourteen years old, so she is only fourteen years ________.

a. older than others b. elder

c. that older d. of age

Ⅲ. 阅读下列短文，注意 be going to 的"to"有的是不定式有的是介词。找出有介词功能的 be going to 句子。

The Little Red Engine Goes to India

小红机车去印度

Very early one morning, when the lines would be clear, the Little Red Engine was brought from the shed.

"WHOOOOOOOO, "cried the Little Red Engine, "I´m going to travel!

I´m going to see the world!

WHOOOOOOOO! "

"I´m the Little Red Engine.

I´m going to travel.

I´m going to see the world.

I´m going to India. "

一大清早，铁道线刚刚朦胧可见，小红机车**就被开出**车库。

"呜…，"小红机车鸣叫着，"我要去旅行了！

我**要去看看**外面的世界了！呜…！"

"我是小红机车。

我要去旅行。

我要去看看外面的世界。

我要到印度去。"

---

* 节选自《最新英国初级英语》第1册第31页。

11 *The Greenwood Boys*

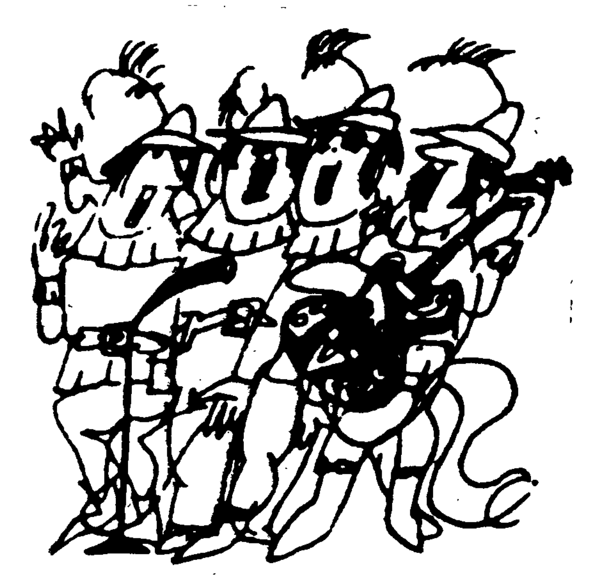
格林伍德青年歌手

一种为人们所不熟悉的模式：will be＋ing（打算，准备）

本课重点　简单将来式的一种重要模式（Ⅲ）

The Greenwood Boys are a group of popular singers. At present, they are visiting all parts of the country.

“格林伍德青年歌手”是一群通俗歌曲演唱家，他们目前正在全国各地巡回演出。



They ***will be arriving*** here tomorrow. They ***will be coming*** by train and most of the young people in the town ***will be meeting*** them at the station. Tomorrow evening they ***will be singing*** at the Workers' Club. The Greenwood Boys ***will be staying*** for five days.

他们**打算**在明天到这里。他们**打算**乘火车来，镇上大多数青年人**准备**在火车站迎接他们。明晚，他们**打算**在工人俱乐部演唱。“格林伍德歌手”**准备**在这里逗留五天。

选自《新概念英语》第2册第13课。

参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》（上）第21页。

During this time, they ***will*** give five performances. As usual, the police ***will*** have a difficult time. They ***will be trying*** to keep order. It is always the same on these occasions.
在此期间，他们**将**演出五场。照例，警察的日子**将**不好过。他们**将设法**维持好秩序。在这种场合下，情况总是一样的。

【讲解】

will be＋V-ing 的第一种内涵（会），已在第10课有所阐述。
这里讲 will be＋-ing 的第二种内涵，即：打算，准备。《新概念英语》的写作特点就是句型集中，词汇丰富，语言地道。文章虽短，但你可以看到，什么地方只用 will 一个词，什么地方则用 will be＋-ing，而且重复出现，句型很集中。
这种表示"打算""准备"，当然是属于将来时域将发生的事。有时，常有表将来的时间状语相伴。

例 I'll be seeing you { ***next week.*** / ***tomorrow.*** / ***in the evening.*** }

I'll be arriving ***in a minute.***

对比内涵（译文自己体会）

1. A：The train ***will arrive*** in a few minutes.
   B：The train ***will be arriving*** in a few minutes.
2. A：We ***are watching*** the football match.
   B：We ***shall be watching*** the football match(this afternoon).
3. A：***Are*** you ***washing*** your car?
   B：***Will*** you ***be washing*** your car (tomorrow)?
4. A：When ***will*** they ***come*** here?
   B：When ***will*** they ***be coming*** here?
5. A：What ***will*** the police ***do*** as usual?
   B：What ***will*** the police ***be trying to*** do as usual?

6. {A：Who ***will meet*** them at the station?
B：Who ***will be meeting*** them at the station?

7. {A：They ***will have*** a difficult time.
B：They ***will be having*** a difficult time.（误）
（这里不能换用，显然意思不通。）

【语言材料】

1. at present 目前
2. at the station 在车站。注意用 at
3. give ... （a）performance（s） 演出…场（不用 one performance）
4. as usual 照例；一般来说
5. have a difficult time 日子不好过
6. try to 试图，设法要
7. It is alway the same 情况总是一样的（老一套）
8. on these occasions 在这种场合下
9. performance 一般指演出，本书的意思当然就是歌曲的演唱，独唱等，相等于 recital 这个词的意思。
10. keep order 维持好秩序

【习题】

Ⅰ. 照下列模式回答问题（在回答中要用单数或复数代词）

A：Didn't they arrive yesterday?
B：No，they ***will be arriving*** tomorrow.

1. Didn't you and Jack play football yesterday?

→

2. Didnt' your teacher correct those copybooks yesterday?

→

3. Didn't they give a performance yesterday?

→

4. Didn't she iron(熨烫)those clothes yesterday?

→

5. Didn't you write to Alice yesterday?

→

Ⅱ. 选择填空

( ) 1. The police ________ expecting the singers to arrive soon.

a. is b. are

c. will d. intends to be

( ) 2. It's always the same on these occasions. It's always the same at ________ like this.

a. times b. places

c. meetings d. performances

( ) 3. The Greenwood Boys will give five performances. They will give five ________.

a. songs b. plays

c. dances d. recitals

( ) 4. They are popular singers. So ________.

a. they are folk(民歌) singers

b. they are public singers

c. they are welcomed by the public

d. everyone think that they are not so good at it

( ) 5. They are visiting all parts of the country. So they will visit ________ of the country.

a. only towns and big cities

b. only villages

c. cities, towns but not villages

d. different places

( ) 6. At present they are visiting all parts of the country. They are doing this ________.

a. all the time b. too often

c. in the near future d. now

( ) 7. The police will have a difficult time ________.

a. than usual
b. as usually
c. as usual
d. from usual

( ) 8. "How ________ staying?" "For five days."

a. long they will be
b. often they will be
c. long will they be
d. often will they be

( ) 9. Most of the young people will be there. ________ the young people will be there.

a. A lot
b. Lot of
c. Nearly all
d. Almost the all

( ) 10. During this time they will give five performances. That's what they'll do ________.

a. while this time
b. on this time
c. for this time
d. at this time

( ) 11. The popular singers will attract ________ in the town.

a. all the people
b. only the old people
c. mainly the young women
d. no one

( ) 12. The police will be there ________.

a. because there will be trouble
b. because the singers are popular singers
c. in case(万一) there will be trouble
d. because there will be a lot of young people there.

( ) 13. As a great many people will be visiting our country, the government(政府) ________ new hotels and fine new swimming pools in Beijing.

a. will built
b. will put out
c. will be builting
d. will be building

( ) 14. The young teacher can't ________ in her classroom.

a. as usual speaking
b. try keep order
c. keep order
d. keep orders

( ) 15. The police will have a difficult time ________.

a. to keep order
b. keeping order
c. try to keep order
d. trying order to keep

12 *On Strike**

罢 工

shall (will) have to (还得，还有必要)

本课重点 简单将来式的常用表达(Ⅳ)

Busmen have decided to go on strike next week. The strike is due to begin on Tuesday. No one knows how long it *will* last. The busmen have stated that the strike *will* continue until general agreement is reached about pay and working conditions.

公共汽车司机决定在下周进行罢工。罢工定于星期二开始。谁也不知道罢工会持续多久。司机们声言罢工要继续下去，直到达成关于工资和劳动条件的总协议为止。

Most people believe that the strike *will* last for at least a week. Many owners of private cars ***are going to*** offer "free rides" to people on their way to work. This *will* relieve pressure on the trains to some extent. Meanwhile, a number of university stu-

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第84课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第157页。

dents have volunteered to drive buses while the strike lasts.
大多数人认为罢工将至少持续一个星期。许多拥有小汽车的人将为一路去上班的人提供"免费乘车"。这将在某种程度上减轻对火车的压力。与此同时，一些大学生已志愿提出在罢工期间驾驶公共汽车。

All the young men are expert drivers, but before they drive any of the buses, they ***will have to*** pass a special test. The students ***are going to*** take the test in two days´time. Even so, people ***are going to*** find it difficult to get to work. But so far, the public has expressed its gratitude to the students in letters to the Press. Only one or two people have objected that the students ***will*** drive too fast!
所有这些年青人都是驾驶能手，但是在驾驶不管哪一辆公共汽车之前，他们**还得**通过一项专门测试。学生们将在两天之后参加测试。即使如此，人们还是感到上班有困难。迄今为止，公众已经用书信向报界表达了对学生们的感激之情。只有一两个人表示反对，认为大学生**会**把车子开得太快的！

【讲解】

1. 本课交叉使用 will, be going to, will have to 三种表达法。
   首先讲一下 will have to 是 have to 的将来式。
   I´ll have to..., =It will be necessary for me to...
   (对于我来说有必要…，也就是"我还得"…)
   例 It will be necessary for them to pass a special test.
   =They ***will have to*** pass a special test.
2. won´t have to 是指"将不必"，"将没有必要"，是 will have to 的否定式，如一般说"不必"，则是另外一种形式。请看，下面三句意思一样：
   You ***don´t have to*** pass the special test.
   You ***needn´t*** pass the special test.
   You ***haven´t got to*** pass the special test.

你不必通过那项专门测试了。

3. will have to 这一表达法，不能只是解释为“将不得不”就算了事，以致学生一碰到 won´t have to 就认为是“将不是不得不”这么一种别别扭扭的意思了。

可以说不少人目前学英语是很苦的，书店里极少有一本为基础英语作学术性讲解的书，你看，都是练习册，九十分对策，英语题库，好像英语只要一头扎进练习题里就不懂也会懂，不通也会通似的。练习固然重要，但质量低劣，甚至本身都错误的练习是一无用处的。

这是一种灾难。

我几年来对几十个班级上千名大专学生进行过测试，都不会用 will have to，haven´t got to 造句，有的学生甚至连听都没听说过，他们只知道 have to，had to，其他概念一无所有。当然，这不能怪学生。

其实，只要记住下表，问题就解决了。

have to	had to
don´t have to 或：haven´t got to } 不必	didn´t have to
will have to 还得	would have to
won´t have to 将不必	wouldn´t have to

4. shall have to 大有被 will have to 代用之势，这在现代英语中第一人称不用 shall，是不足为怪的事。

例 We ***will have to*** help him as much as we can.

我们还得尽可能帮他一把。

5. 另外还有较深层次的表达，你不妨看一看：

1) We ***might have had to*** do this.

我们**说不定还有必要**做这件事呢。

2) These last two days I ***have had to*** take a rest.

最近两天来,我**确实有必要**休息一下。

3) We ***might have to*** cancel his plan.

我们**也许有必要**取消他的计划。

以上几条例句,已超出基础英语的范围,不过供你参阅罢了。

【语言材料】

1. decide to　决定
2. go on strike　进行罢工或罢课(不同于 be on strike,这是状态)
3. be due to　预定,定于
4. reach an agreement　达成一项协议
5. at least　至少
6. offer　提供,向什么人提供,后跟 to
7. on one's way to　一路去…(to 是介词)
8. pressure on　在…身上的压力
9. to some extent　在某种程度上
10. a number of　一些(后面用可数名词)
11. volunteer to　志愿提出干某事
12. last　持续(指时间),后面不用介词(for {at least / over} 除外)

   例　1) His illness lasted a month.

   他生了一个月的病。

   2) Her anger won't last.

   她的怒气很快就会消除的。

13. get to work　上班
14. find it difficult to　这个 it 是形式宾语,解释为"这件事",真正的宾语是 to 引起的句子。
15. so far　迄今,常和完成时态连用。

【习题】

选择填空

( ) 1. The strike is due to begin on Tuesday. That's when it ________.

a. began b. is going to begin

c. has begun d. will have begun

( ) 2. They will go on strike. So they ________.

a. won't be working

b. will be on the strike

c. will be on their strike

d. won't be talking

( ) 3. No one knows how long it will last. They don't know how long it will ________.

a. continue b. keep

c. hold d. spend time

( ) 4. It will last for at least a week. So it might be ________ than a week.

a. less b. more

c. much less d. a great deal less

( ) 5. They've volunteered to drive buses. That's what they are ________ to do.

a. impatient b. eager

c. anxious d. willing

( ) 6. The public ________ expressed ________ gratitude.

a. has...its b. has...it's

c. have...theirs d. have...their's

( ) 7. How ________? No one knows.

a. long it will last

b. will it last long

c. long will it last

d. long it lasts

( ) 8. Before ________ any buses, they will have to take a special test.

a. they will drive b. they drive

c. to drive d. driving to

( ) 9. One or two people objected ________ the plan.

a. against b. for

c. at d. to

( ) 10. Do you think ________?

a. they will have to take the test

b. will they have to take the test

c. they are necessary to take the test

d. they will be necessary to take the test

( ) 11. How long will the special test ________?

a. last for b. last on

c. last d. goes on

( ) 12. I have ________ things that I must do.

a. a number of b. the number of

c. a great deal of d. lot of

( ) 13. They are going to offer "free ride" to people.

They will offer ________ "free ride".

a. to people b. people to

c. people d. people on its way to work

( ) 14. Alice ________ to Chicago right away.

a. desided to go b. decided to move

c. volunteered go d. on her way

( ) 15. Workers ________ strike.

a. are at b. will go on for

c. are again on d. will have to go

13 *Sold Out*[*]

满 座

may have begun, ***have*** sold out

本课重点 现在完成式的两种基本模式(Ⅰ)

"The play may begin at any moment," I said.

"It ***may have*** begun already," Susan answered.

"戏也许会随时演出,"我说。

"也许早已开演了,"苏姗答道。

I hurried to the ticket-office.

"May I have two tickets please?" I asked.

"I'm sorry, we***'ve sold out***, "the girl said.

"What a pity!"Susan exclaimed.

我匆忙走到票房。"我可以买两张票吗?"我问道。

"对不起,票都卖完了,"姑娘说道。

"真遗憾!"苏珊大声说。

Just then, a man hurried to the ticket-office.

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第19课。

参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第33页。

"Can I return these two tickets?" he asked.

"Certainly," the girl said.

I went back to the ticket-office at once.

"Could I have those two tickets please?" I asked.

"Certainly," the girl said, "but they are for next Wednesday's performance. Do you still want them?"

"I might as well have them," I said sadly.

正在这时,一个男人匆忙走到票房。

"我可以退掉这两张票吗?"他问道。

"当然可以,"姑娘说。

我立刻返回到票房。

"请问,我可以买那两张票吗?"我问道。

"当然可以,"姑娘说道,"不过这两张票是下星期三的戏票。你还要吗?"

"我还是买了吧。"我怏怏不快地说。

【讲解】

现在完成式的模式就是 have+过去分词。这一点在初中英语第四册,也就是在初二的下半学期就都学过了。

have+过去分词的模式并不重要。重要的是使用。

1. 首先讲 may have,这是一种猜测,"可能已经"发生了什么什么事情。它的否定式是 may not have,意思是"不见得会…",may have 也可以用 might have 代用。

   例 He ***may(might) have*** telephoned last night, but I'm not sure.

   昨晚他**可能已经**打**过**电话了,不过我说不准。

   He ***might not have*** telephoned last night.

   昨晚他**不见得会**打**过**电话。

   用到 may(might) have,主要是对过去时域内所发生的事的猜测,不是十分肯定的叙述。

2. 什么叫“We've sold out”？这是口语表达，比较简化。

全句是：We have sold out all the tickets.

3. It ***may have*** begun already.

=***Perhaps*** it ***has begun*** already.

也许已经开始**过**了。

4. He ***may have*** telephoned last night.

=***Perhaps*** he ***telephoned*** last night.

也许他昨晚打**过**电话了。

5. The play ***may*** begin at any time.

=***Perhaps*** the play ***will*** begin at any time.

也许戏随时**会**开始演出。

【语言材料】

1. at any moment　随时
2. hurry to　匆忙走向
3. may I have　我可以买下；我可以要…（或：Could I have）
4. what a pity　真遗憾
5. just then　正在那时
6. went back to　又返回到
7. at once　马上
8. might as well　还是…算了
9. We've sold out　这是惯用语，“把…全部售出”，都用这句话

【习题】

Ⅰ. 改写句子

1. Perhaps he arrived yesterday evening.

He ________ yesterday evening.

2. Perhaps she has visited London already.

She ________ already.

3. Perhaps he ***will*** return these two tickets.

He ________ these two tickets.

4. Mr Henry might have passed the important test.

   Perhaps Mr Henry ________ the important test.

5. She might have written to Mr White.

   Perhaps she ________ Mr White.

6. She might have gone to the party.

   Perhaps she ________ the party.

Ⅱ. 照下列模式补全句子

A: Do you think she ***went to*** the party ***last night***? B: She ***might have*** gone, but I don't think she ***did***.

1. A: Do you think she telephoned last night?

   B: She ________, but I don't think she ________.

2. A: Do you think they will arrive tonight?

   B: They ________, but I don't think they ________.

3. A: Do you think he left this morning?

   B: He ________, but I don't think he ________.

4. A: Do you think they will go to the party?

   B: They ________, but I don't think they ________.

5. A: Do you think he wrote to her last week?

   B: He ________, but I don't think he ________.

Ⅲ. 选择填空

( ) 1. So far, we ________ five performances.

a. give　　b. will give

c. want to give　　d. have given

( ) 2. ________ these two tickets?

a. Have I returned

b. Did I have returned

c. Have Mr Henry returned

d. I have returned

( ) 3. May I have two tickets? Please let me ________ two tickets.

a. have   b. to have

c. take   d. bring

( ) 4. "What a pity!" Susan exclaimed. Susan was ________.

a. pleased   b. glad

c. amused   d. sorry

( ) 5. Can I return these tickets? I want to ________.

a. give them back   b. give back them

c. give them up   d. give up them

( ) 6. "Certainly" she said. "________"the girl said.

a. All light   b. Of course

c. Surely not   d. Not at all

( ) 7. May I have two tickets please?________ two tickets please?

a. You must give me

b. You have got to give me

c. You may give me

d. Could I have

( ) 8. I might as well have them. I am ________ to have them.

a. very glad   b. not very glad

c. pleased   d. satisfied

( ) 9. The teacher turns on the light and, pointing, says;

a. I turned on the light.

b. I've turned the light on

c. I'll turn the light on

d. I'll have to turn the light on

( ) 10. She saw him two years ago, but she ________ since she came here.

a. hasn't seen him   b. doesn't see him

c. didn't see him   d. will not see him

14 *An Exciting Trip**

一次令人兴奋的旅行

have been to, have gone to, have been＋副词

本课重点 现在完成式最常见的三种基本表达法（Ⅱ）

I ***have just received*** a letter from my brother, Tim. He is in Australia. He ***has been there*** for six months. Tim is an engineer. He is working for a big firm and he ***has*** already ***visited*** a great number of different places in Australia.

我刚收到我兄弟蒂姆的一封信，他在澳大利亚。他去那里有六个月了。蒂姆是一个工程师，他在一家大的商行工作，他还到过澳大利亚的许多地方。

He ***has just bought*** an Australian car and ***has gone to*** Alice Springs, a small town in the centre of Australia.

他刚买了一辆澳大利亚制造的小汽车，他已经去艾利斯斯普林斯了，那是澳大利亚中部的一个小镇。

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第4课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》（上）第5页。

He will soon visit Darwin. From there, he will fly to Perth. My brother ***has*** never ***been abroad*** before, so he is finding this trip very exciting.
不久他将访问达尔文市。从那里，他将飞往佩思。我的兄弟以前从未到过国外，因此他觉得这次旅行是令人兴奋的。

【讲解】

1. 这一课谈现在完成式的三种基本表达法。先看下面例句的比较：

   1) I ***have been to*** { the war. 我参加过打仗。 / Australia. 我**去过**澳大利亚。 }

   (have been fo＋名词，been＝gone and returned)

   2) I ***have been*** { ***there.*** 我**去过**那里。(国外) / ***abroad.*** }

   (have been＋副词，不用 to，been＝gone and returned)

   3) ***Have*** you ever ***been to*** Australia. 你以前去过澳大利亚吗？

   (ever 强调"以前")

   4) { I ***have*** never ***been to*** Australia. 我从未去过澳大利亚。
   I ***have*** never ***been there.*** 我从未去过那里。
   I ***have*** never ***been abroad.*** 我从未去过国外。 }

   5) { He ***has gone to*** Australia.
   他已到澳大利亚去了(人已走了)。
   He ***has gone there.*** 他已去那里。
   He ***has gone abroad.***
   他已去国外。 }

   6) He ***has been there*** for six months.
   他在那里呆了有六个月了。

2. 现在完成式常和下列各词及短语连用(这仅是一部分)：

1	2	3	4	5
just	for...	already	now	lately

6	7	8	9
yet	so far	never	ever

1) He has ***just*** bought...(他刚买了…

2) He has been there ***for*** six months. (有六个月了)

3) He has ***already*** visited... (早已访问过…)

4) He has retired ***now***. (现在他已退休)

5) Have you read any books ***lately***? (近来你读了什么书吗?)

6) The train has not arrived ***yet***. (火车尚未到站。)

7) I haven't seen her ***so far***. (迄今我未曾见到过她。)

8) I have ***never*** been to... (从未去过…)

9) Have you ***ever*** visited...? (以前访问过…?)

讲到 so far，有时用 up till now 换用。

例 ***Up till now*** I have been to New York three times.

=I have been to New York three times ***so far***.

迄今我去过纽约三次。

【语言材料】

1. work for　为…工作(主要用在为某某家公司，商行工作)
2. a great number of　许许多多(后接可数名词)
3. different places　各地，各处
4. fly to　乘飞机飞往
5. he is finding　他觉得，不是解释他正在发现，find 用在进行式是一种带有感情色彩的用法。不过，本课最后一句好像没有明显的 be 动词，你感觉到吗?

...so he is finding this trip very exciting.

宾语　　补语

（不用 be）

find 这个词，有两种常见的结构，试比较：

They found *that* John *was* quite a good student.
They found him quite a good student.

He found the trip very exciting.
He found *that* the trip *was* very exciting.

that 从句后面要有主、谓。否则就是宾语补语形式。下面是错句：

He found that this no light task.

他觉得这件事不是轻而易举的事。

应该说：He found *that* this *was* no light task.（有主谓）
He found this no light task.（宾语补语）

【习题】

Ⅰ．用下列模式完成句子，（现在完成式＋already）

A：Write a letter to him.
B：I've already written a letter to him.

1. A：Tell him to do his homework.
   B：He ________.
2. A：Take a holidy.
   B：I ________.
3. A：Have your breakfast.
   B：I ________.
4. A：Turn on the radio.
   B：I ________.
5. A：Tell him to leave.
   B：He ________.

Ⅱ. 选择填空

( ) 1. Tim is in Australia. How long ________ there?

a. is he　　b. has he

c. was he　　d. has he been

( ) 2. He will fly to Perth. He will go there ________.

a. by the air　　b. by a plane

c. through air　　d. in a plane

( ) 3. He will soon visit Darwin. He will visit Darwin ________.

a. shortly　　b. in a hurry

c. quickly　　d. for a short time

( ) 4. Tim is working for a big firm. He is working for a big ________.

a. store　　b. department store

c. factory　　d. company

( ) 5. Tim is in Australia. He ________ Australia six months ago.

a. went　　b. went to

c. has gone to　　d. has been to

( ) 6. He has just bought an Australian car. He bought one ________.

a. last year　　b. six months ago

c. a long time ago　　d. a short time ago

( ) 7. He has just gone to Australia. He ________.

a. is not here　　b. is still here

c. intends to go there　　d. is leaving for Australia

( ) 8. He is finding this trip very exciting. He is finding that this trip ________.

a. very interesting　　b. very pleasant

c. is very exciting　　d. was very happy

( ) 9. Miss Alice has never been ________.

a. to abroad　　b. abroad ago

c. there ago　　d. to England before

( ) 10. You ________ asked that questions two times.

a. already have　　b. have already

c. have never　　　　　　　d. have lately

( ) 11. He has broken two world records ________.

a. yet　　　　　　　b. two days ago

c. before two days　　　　　　　d. so far

( ) 12. I haven't seen George ________.

a. up until now　　　　　　　b. lately

c. already　　　　　　　d. just now

( ) 13. He has just returned ________.

a. abroad　　　　　　　b. from abroad

c. abroad lately　　　　　　　d. abroad up to now

( ) 14. He has ________ the house.

a. just leaved　　　　　　　b. already leaved

c. already buyed　　　　　　　d. never been to

( ) 15. "Sweep the floor." "I have already ________."

a. did that　　　　　　　b. done the floor

c. sweeped it　　　　　　　d. swept the floor

( ) 16. "Tell them to do their homework." "I have ________."

a. already told them to　　　　　　　b. already made them to

c. already let them to　　　　　　　d. already toled them to

( ) 17. ________ a letter from him yet?

a. Did you receive

b. Did you take

c. Have you taken

d. Have you received

( ) 18. "Have you had lunch yet?" "Yes, I ________."

a. had my lunch yet

b. haven't had lunch yet

c. have already had lunch

d. had lunch already

( ) 19. "Have you been very successful(得意) lately?" "________."

a. I'm not very successful so far

b. I haven't been very successful so far

c. I have been very successful yet

d. I´m already successful lately

( ) 20. "Is Mr White at home?" "________."

a. No. He has gone to Alice Springs

b. No. He has been to America

c. No. He has gone to his office twenty minutes ago

d. No. He has went to his company twenty minutes before

15 *Taxi!*[*]

出租飞机

Since then, Captain Fawcett ***has flown*** passengers to many unusual places.

本课重点 现在完成式和 just, since then 连用(Ⅲ)

Captain Ben Fawcett ***has bought*** an unusual taxi and ***has begun*** a new service. The "taxi" is a small Swiss aeroplane called a "Pilatus Porter". This wonderful plane can carry seven passengers. The most surprising thing about it, however, is that it can land anywhere: on snow, water, or even on a ploughed field.

机长本·福塞脱买了一架不同寻常的小出租飞机并开始了一项新颖的业务。这架"出租飞机"是一架瑞士造的小飞机,叫做"皮拉特斯·波特"。这架奇妙的飞机可以载客七名。然而,最令人惊奇的是,这

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第29课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第53页。

架飞机能在任何地方着陆：在雪地上，水面上，甚至在耕过的田地里。

Captain Fawcett's first passenger was a doctor who flew from Birmingham to a lonely village in the Welsh mountains. ***Since then***, Captain Fawcett ***has flown*** passengers to many unusual places. Once he landed on the roof of a block of flats and on another occasion, he landed in a deserted car park.

机长福塞脱的第一位乘客是一位医生，他自伯明翰飞往威尔士山区的一个偏僻的村庄。打那之后，机长福塞脱曾空运乘客到过许多不平常的地方。有一次他降落在一排公寓的房顶上，还有一次，他降落在一个废弃的汽车停车场上。

Captain Fawcett ***has just refused*** a strange request from a businessman. The man wanted to fly to Rockall, a lonely island in the Atlantic Ocean, but Captain Fawcett did not take him because the trip was too dangerous.

机长福塞脱刚刚拒绝了一个商人离奇的请求。此人要飞往洛卡尔，一座在大西洋里的孤岛，但是福塞脱机长没有送他去，因为这一旅程实在太危险了。

【讲解】

1. since then, since, ever since 都和现在完成式连用。本课只讲 just, since then，第16课将专论 ever since, since.

   Since 的概念是指某一时间、时期**结束以来**。所以 since then，就是指从那时**之后**，目前的情况**已经**怎么怎么。

例 The last time I sent a letter to my friend was two weeks ago.

上次我寄一封信给我的朋友是在两个星期之前。(所以:打那时起到现在(从那之后)我就没有寄一封信给我的朋友了。)

=I haven't sent a letter to my friend ***since then.***

再如 The last time I cleaned my teeth was at eight thirty.

上次我刷牙的时间是在八点半。(所以:从那(八点半)之后,我就没有刷过牙。)=I haven't cleaned my teeth
- ***since*** eight thirty.
- since then.
- since that time.

总结

这部分总是用过去式	+ 完成时态+(since then)
Captain Faucett's first passenger ***was*** a doctor...	Since then, Captain Faucett has flown passengers to...
We ***grew*** tobacco in 1950,	but we haven't grown it ***since then.***
We ***saw*** him two years ago,	but we ***haven't seen*** him ***since then.***

2. 关于 just,指刚刚,时间不久。这个词容易理解。例如:
   1) I ***heard*** the news on the radio ***a few seconds ago.***
      几秒种之前我在广播中听到这消息。
      =I've ***just*** heard the news on the radio.
   2) He ***began*** learning English ***only a week ago.***
      他只是一星期之前才开始学英语的。
      =He has ***just*** learned English.
   3) The cat ***had*** kittens ***a few days ago.***

这只猫在几天前养了几只小猫。

=The cat has just had kittens.

4) I met him ***less than an hour ago.***

不到一个小时前我又碰见他了。

=I have ***just*** met him.

5) I ***said*** good-bye to her ***a little while ago.***

我跟她道别才一小会时间。

=I have ***just*** said good-bye to her.

【语言材料】

1. begin a new service　刚刚开始营业
2. lonely village　偏僻乡村
3. lonely island　孤岛
4. land on　着陆在…，(in)是着陆在…里
5. on another occasion　另一次
6. request from　来自…的请求
7. want to　想要
8. fly to　飞往
9. the most...thing is that...　最…的一件事就是…

【习题】

Ⅰ. 用 just 和完成时态连用根据第一句的意思重写

1. He recovered from his illness(痊愈)***yesterday.***

→

2. I found those old photographs ***not so long ago.***

→

3. She came to Shanghai ***a day or two ago.***

→

4. It started to rain ***a few minutes ago.***

→

5. He turned the light out ***a short time ago.***

→

Ⅱ. 选择填空

( ) 1. This is the most surprising thing about it. It is more surprising than ________.

a. anything else　　b. anything

c. any other things　　d. another things

( ) 2. He flew a doctor to a Welsh village. ________ he has flown to many unusual places.

a. Since then　　b. Since that times

c. By that time　　d. From then

( ) 3. The man wanted to fly to Rockall. He wanted the pilot to ________ him there.

a. bring　　b. take

c. put　　d. flew

( ) 4. It's an unusual taxi. It isn't very ________.

a. usually　　b. common

c. uncommon　　d. big

( ) 5. The car park was deserted. It was ________.

a. empty　　b. not beautiful

c. abandoned　　d. wasted

( ) 6. "Did you stay with him in 1966?" "Yes, I did, but I haven't stayed with him ________."

a. since in 1966　　b. since from 1966

c. since than　　d. since then

( ) 7. A businessman asked him to fly to Rockall and he ________.

a. refused　　b. refused to doing so

c. refused his ask　　d. refussed

( ) 8. It's a lonely village. It's ________.

a. far　　b. alone

c. the only one　　d. far from anywhere

( ) 9. Captain Fawcett will fly passengers ________ anywhere ________ very dangerous places.

a. to…except b. to…expect

c. x…besides d. x…except

( )10. Captain Faucett's first passenger was a doctor ________ flew from Birminghan to a lonely village.

a. he b. whom

c. the doctor d. who

Ⅲ. 阅读下列短文，只填一个字"买"

Why Didn't Anybody Want to Buy the Horse? *

为什么没有人要买这匹马?

A man wanted to sell his old horse, so he took him to the market. Because the horse was old, nobody wanted to buy him, but at last a young man stopped in front of him and said,

"How old is he?"

"He is twenty-one years old," said the older man.

"How long have you ________(买)him?"

"Nearly nineteen years."

"And what is his name?"

"I don't know. But I call him Tom."

---

* 选自 L. A. Hill, Intermediate Stories for Reproduction, Oxford University Press, 1983.

16 *No Parking* !

不准停车

> ...but ***ever since*** he ***moved*** in, he ***has had***
> (过去式)
> trouble with motorists.

本课重点 现在完成式与 ever since 连用(Ⅳ)

Jasper White is one of those rare people who believes in ancient myths. He ***has just bought*** a new house in the city, but ***ever since*** he moved in, he ***has had*** trouble with motorists.

贾斯珀·怀特是那种少见的相信古代神话的人之一。他在城里刚买了一幢新房,但自从他搬进去以来,他已经同汽车司机闹上了纠纷。

When he returns home at night, he always finds that someone ***has parked*** a car outside his gate. Because of this, he ***has not been able to*** get his own car into his garage even once. Jasper ***has put*** up "No Parking" signs outside his

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第28课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第52页。

gate, but these ***have not had*** any effect.
当他晚上回家时,他总是发现有人把一辆汽车停在他的家门口。由于这个原因,他连一次也没能把他自己的汽车开进车库。贾斯珀已经不止一次地把"不准停车"的牌子挂在门口,但未曾起过任何作用。

Now he ***has put*** an ugly stone head over the gate. It is one of the ugliest faces I ***have ever seen.*** I asked him what it was and he told me that it was Medusa, the Gorgon. Jasper hopes that she will turn motorists to stone. But none of them ***has been turned to*** stone yet!
现在他把一个丑陋的石头人头像放在大门边,那是我看见过的最丑陋的人面像之一。我问他那是什么,他告诉我那是美杜莎,是蛇发女怪。贾斯珀希望这女怪将会把汽车司机们变成石头。可是至今还没有一个人被变成石头呢!(美杜莎为蛇发女怪,谁要被她看到,谁就会变成石头,这是希腊神话中的故事。)

【讲解】

1. ever since 的结构:(作为连词)=since

   完成时态———→ ever since +主+动词简单过去式

   例 I ***have known*** him ever since he ***was*** a child.
   他从小我就认识他了。
   这种用法同 since 差不多,不过 ever since 比 since 用得少。
   再如:We ***have lived*** in Shanghai ever since we ***came*** to China.
   自从我们来到中国之后就住在上海。

2. 以上所说的 ever since 作为连词。
   ever since 也可作为副词,解释"此后"(就一直…)

例:1) He ***fell*** ill at Christmas and ***has been ill ever since.***
他在圣诞节生病了**此后**就一直不适。(has+be ill)
2) He ***left*** home last year and ***has been away ever since.***
他去年离家走了,**此后**一直在外面。(has+be away)

3) He ***fell*** off his horse a week ago and ***has been in bed ever since.***

一周前他从马背上跌了下来，**从那以后**就一直躺在床上。

4) He ***went*** to Turkey in 1950 and ***has lived*** there ***ever since.***

他在1950年去土耳其，**此后**就一直住在那里。

3. has not been able to　这实际上就是 be able to 加上 have 罢了。所谓 be able to 就是"有可能"不是"能"(can)。如果一直，始终没有可能就是 has not been able to，这很简单。

如果 it has not been easy. 就是"那件事一直不是轻而易举的。"完成时态不一定都解释为"已经"，有时要解释为"一直"。

【语言材料】

1. have trouble with *sb.*　与某人发生了纠纷
2. return home　不可用 return to home
3. at night　不可用 at the night
4. because of　由于
5. even once　即使是一次
6. have effect　产生效果
7. turn...to　把…变为

【习题】

Ⅰ. 用正确的动词形式

1. The family ________(settle 定居) in New York in 1980 and ________(be) there ever since.
2. John ________ (catch) cold the day before yesterday and ________(be) in bed ever since.
3. Ever since he ________(leave) us, we ________(do) nothing.
4. How many people ________(believe) in ancient myths?
5. However, the signs didn't seem ________(have) much effect.
6. However, the signs have not ________(have) any effect.

7. The signs haven't ________(affect) anyone.

8. How long has it been ever since he ________(return)?

9. We ________(have,no) trouble ever since we came here.

10. Ever since they ________ (move) in, they ________ (have) trouble with us.

Ⅱ. 选择填空

( ) 1. You can see some ________ outside his gate. They say "No Parking".

a. notices b. notes

c. signals d. sighns

( ) 2. He is a rare person. You ________ meet such people.

a. sometimes b. never

c. often d. seldom

( ) 3. He has just bought a new house. He ________ it three days ago.

a. has bought b. has had

c. has had bought d. bought

( ) 4. He has just bought a new house. He has been in it ________.

a. ever since he has bought it b. a short time ago

c. since a short time d. for a short time

( ) 5. It is one of the ugliest faces I have ever seen. I've never seen ________.

a. a more uglier one b. an ugly one

c. an uglier one d. an ugliest one

( ) 6. There is always a car outside his gate. ________ he can't get into his garage.

a. That's why b. Because

c. For this d. Because this

( ) 7. ________ of them has been turned to stone.

a. No one b. Not one

c. Not a people d. Even not persons

( ) 8. When he returns home at night, he always ________ someone has put an ugly stone head over the gate.

a. found that　　b. found

c. find　　d. finds that

(　) 9. I asked him ________ and he told me that it was a stone head.

a. what was it　　b. what does it

c. what it was　　d. what did it mean

(　) 10. Jasper ________ "No Parking" signs outside his gate ever since he saw someone park a car there.

a. put up　　b. didn't put up

c. has put up　　d. hasn't able to put up

Ⅲ. 阅读下列短文，把括号内动词给予正确形式

What Was the Result? *

结果是什么？

Mr Black gave his wife money every Friday evening, but she always spent it before the next Wednesday, so that for the next three days she ________(have) none.

Every Tuesday evening Mr Black asked her, "But what did you spend all that money on?" and she always answered, "I don't know."

One Friday Mr Black brought home an exercise book and a pencil and gave them to his wife with her money. "Now look!" he said to her. "When you get money from me, write it down on this page, and on the opposite page(背面)write down what happens to the money."

When Mr Black came home the next Tuesday, his wife came to him and showed him the book. "I ________(do) what you told me," she said happily. On one page she had written "Friday, 28th June. I got £18

---

* 选自 L. A. Hill, Intermediate Stories for Reproduction, Oxford University Press, 1983.

from John"; and on the opposite page, "Tuesday, 2nd July. I ________ (spend) it all."

17 *A Pretty Carpet**

一条漂亮的地毯

I ***have been working*** hard all morning.

本课重点 现在完成进行式所表达的概念

We have just moved into a new house and I ***have been working*** hard all morning. I ***have been trying*** to get my new room in order. This ***has not been*** easy because I own over a thousand books.

我们刚搬进一座新房子而整个上午我都在卖力地干活。我一直在想办法把我的新房间收拾整齐。这始终不是件容易的事，因为我有一千多册书呢。

To make matters worse, the room is rather small, so I have temporarily put my books on the floor. At the moment, they cover

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第52课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第100页。

every inch of floor space and I actually have to walk on them to get in or out of the room.

更糟的是，这个房间可是太小了，所以我暂时把书都摆在地板上。眼下，这些书把整个地板都盖满了，因此我实际上只得踩着书本进出我的房间。

A short while ago, my sister helped me to carry one of my old bookcases up the stairs. She went into my room and got a big surprise when she saw all those books on the floor. "This is the prettiest carpet I have ever seen," she said. She gazed at it for some time then added, "You don't need bookcases at all. You can sit here in your spare time and read the carpet!"

刚才，我的妹妹帮我把一只旧书橱抬上了楼。她走进我的房间，见到地板上所有这些书的时候，她大吃一惊。"这是我所见过的最漂亮的一条地毯，"她说。她盯着"地毯"看了一会儿然后补充说道："你压根用不着书橱了。你有空就坐在这里看这条地毯吧！"

【讲解】

1. "现在完成进行式"这个名称是一无用处的。它只是解释 have been＋ing 这一表达法的语法构成而已。

   这一表达所要表示的概念无非就是"一直""始终"这一类的意思，十分简单，并无奥妙之处。我们最好注意一下与之相伴的某些词或时间状语。

   例 A：How long ***have*** you ***been writing*** letters?
   你(一直在)写信写了有多长时间啦？
   B：I'***ve been writing*** letters for an hour (since three o'clock).
   我写了有1个小时了。(从3点钟起就一直在写信。)

   例 A：How long ***have*** you ***been coming*** to this school?
   你来这所学校上学一直上了有多久啦？
   B：I'***ve been coming*** to this school for two terms (since May).

我来这所学校上学一直上了有两个学期了。(从五月份起我就一直来这所学校上学。)

2. 这种“一直”就是至今仍然在继续的意思。如果我们说：

He ***has been helping*** her with her homework for months.

几个月来他一直在帮助她做家庭作业。

这句话的内涵是：He started to help her with her homework months ago, and he still does.

几个月之前他开始帮助她做作业，他现在仍然在帮她。这样，试把下列两句话改写成现在完成进行式：

1) He started to mend shoes for a living five years ago, and he still does.

——→He ***has been mending*** shoes for a living ***for*** five years.

2) They started to learn Arabic(阿拉伯语)last April, and they're still learning it.

——→They ***have been learning*** Arabic ***since*** last April.

现在再用英语把下列两句话重写一遍，看看现在完成进行式的内涵：

1) I'***ve been sitting*** here ***for*** a minute.

——→I sat down here a minute ago, and I'm still sitting here.

2) He ***has been talking*** to her ***since*** quarter past nine.

——→He started to talk to her at quarter past nine, and he is still talking.

3. 关于 since 和 ***for the last*** three weeks 之区别。

since 后面不可跟具体的数字(钟点除外)

如：We have been staying here ***since*** three weeks. (错)

三周以来我们一直住在这儿。

为了要表达这一意思，就要借助于下列表达法：

a) for the last…
b) for the past…
c) in the past…　　}(以来)＋完成式(或完成进行式)
d) over the past…
e) during the last…

你千万不要一看到有 past，last 就认为只能用动词过去式，这你就错了。试看下列例句：

1) He hasn't had anything to eat ***for the last*** twelve hours.
12个小时**以来**，他未曾吃过什么东西。
2) He's lived here ***for the last*** few years.
几年**以来**他就住在这儿。
3) ***In the past*** two years I've seen him little.
两年**来**，我很少见到他。
4) I've been feeling well ***for the past*** few days.
几天**来**，我一直身体不错。
5) She has been on the phone ***for the past*** hour.
一个小时**以来**，她一直在打电话。

【语言材料】

1. move into　搬进
2. get…in order　把…弄整齐，收拾好
3. to make matters worse　更糟的是
4. at the moment　眼下，目前
5. floor space　地板的面积
6. a short while ago　片刻之前
7. up the stairs　楼上，＝upstairs（副词）
8. get a big surprise　大吃一惊
9. gaze at　目不转睛地看着
10. in one's spare time　在某人的空余时间
11. rather small　颇小、相当小，这个 rather 与 fairly 为相对词，

都有“相当”之意，但 rather 往往用在贬义。

【习题】

I．用现在完成进行式改写下列句子：(注意 for，since 的使用)

1. He began studying maths in 1981.

   ———→

2. I began listening to the radio after you went out.

   ———→

3. They began working harder when they failed the exam.

   ———→

4. He began working in that office six months ago.

   ———→

5. I started to go to the cinema years ago, and I often go there now.

   ———→

6. She started to do morning exercises every day ten years ago, and she still does.

   ———→

7. He started fishing in this river at lunchtime, and he's still fishing here.

   ———→

8. I started teaching this lesson ten minutes ago, and I'm still teaching you.

   ———→

9. He began teaching that class at Christmas.

   ———→

10. She began eating a lot of sweets(糖果) when she gave up smoking.

    ———→

II．选择填空

( ) 1. He has been working hard all morning and he ________ hard.

a. still is working　　　　b. is still working

c. still working　　　　d. still worked

( ) 2. He's been trying to get his room in order. He wants to ________.

a. keep it tidy　　　　b. make it tidy

c. keep order　　　　d. keep orders

( ) 3. His room is rather small. It's ________ room.

a. a small enough　　　　b. a fairly small

c. an enough small　　　　d. a much smaller

( ) 4. She helped him ________ one of his old bookcases up the stairs.

a. carry　　　　b. carrying

c. to cary　　　　d. to carrying

( ) 5. The man ________ bookcases.

a. needn't　　　　b. needs not

c. doesn't need　　　　d. is not need

( ) 6. He has temporarily put his books on the floor. They won't be there ________.

a. for a short time　　　　b. for a few hours.

c. for a few days　　　　d. long

( ) 7. The book cover every inch of floor space. They take up(占) a lot of ________.

a. rooms　　　　b. room

c. place　　　　d. spaces

( ) 8. She gazed at the carpet for some time. She ________ it.

a. glanced at　　　　b. had a glimpse of

c. stared at　　　　d. looked at

( ) 9. What makes ________ worse is that the room is rather small.

a. the matter　　　　b. the matters

c. matter　　　　d. matters

(c) 10. She went into my room and got a big surprise. She ________ my room and she was ________ surprised.

a. entered into…very

b. entered to…greatly

c. entered…much

d. got into…quiet

( ) 11. "They've watched television for three hours."

"Yes, they ________ and ________ it."

a. have watched…they're go on watching

b. have watched…they still watch

c. have been watching television…they are still waching

d. have been watching it…they don't stop to watch

( ) 12. They have been playing football ________ lunchtime and they're still playing.

a. for　　b. at

c. from　　d. since

( ) 13. He ________ at this hotel for the last three weeks.

a. stayed　　b. did stay

c. has been staying　　d. staied

( ) 14. It has been raining ________ yesterday.

a. from　　b. for about

c. sinse　　d. since

( ) 15. He has been ringing me up ________.

a. all the morning　　b. all mourning

c. all the afternoon　　d. all afternoon

18 *Do You Speak English?* *

你会讲英语吗？

> ***After*** I ***had*** left a small village in the south of France, I ***drove*** on to the next town.

本课重点 过去完成式与 after, as soon as, when, not... until 连用（I）

I had an amusing experience last year. ***After I had left*** a small village in the south of France, I drove on to the next town.

去年，我曾有过一段好笑的经历。在我离开法国南部的一个小村庄之后，我继续开车驶向下一个城填。

On the way, a young man waved to me. I stopped and he asked me for a lift. ***As soon as*** he had got

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第14课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》（上）第32页。

into the car, I said good morning to him in French and he replied in the same language. Apart from a few words, I do not know any French at all.
在路上,一个年青人向我招手。我停下车,他要求搭个便车。他一上车子,我就用法语向他道声早安,而他用同样的语言作了回答。除了懂仅有的几句话以外,我压根不懂什么法语。
Neither of us spoke during the journey. I ***had nearly reached*** the town, when the young man suddenly said, very slowly, "Do you speak English?" As I soon learnt, he was English himself!
旅途中,我们双方都没有说话。我快要到达那座城填时突然这位年青人说话了,他说得很慢,"你会讲英语吗?"那时我马上明白过来,他本身就是英国人!

【讲解】

1. 当两个动作都在过去发生,那末在有先后的情况下,第一个动作就用 had+过去分词。

   例 1) The children ran away. (孩子逃走了。)

   2) They broke the window. (他们打碎了窗户。)

   第一个动作显然先要打碎窗户,然后再逃之夭夭。所以连起来说就是:

   The children ran away ***after*** they ***had broken*** the window.
   After the children ***had broken*** the window they ran away.

   例 1) The sun set. (太阳下山了。)

   2) We returned to our hotel. (我们回到旅店。)

   As soon as the sun ***had set*** we returned to our hotel. (太阳一下山,我们就回到旅店。)

2. When 有时也和过去完成式连用。

例 ***When*** he ***had finished*** lunch he asked for a glass of water.

当他吃完中饭之后，他要讨杯水喝。(有先后动作关系)

3. 关于 not...until 句型和过去完成式的关系。

I $\underbrace{\text{had } \boxed{\text{not}} \text{ understood}}_{\text{才 懂}}$ the problem $\underset{\text{直到}}{\boxed{\text{until}}}$ he explained it .

直到他解释了那个问题之后我**才**懂。

这里有两个动词，一是"懂"，一是"解释"，所以有先后关系。

比较：I ***did not*** understand the problem ***until*** last night.

在这句话里面，没有先后的动词关系，所以用 did not 。

【语言材料】

1. have an experience　碰到一件事，有一种经历
2. in the south of　在…的南部(在该地区之内之南部)
3. drive on　继续开车
4. on the way　在路途上
5. ask ***sb.*** for a lift　请求别人给予搭便车
6. get into　进入
7. say good morning to　向人道早安
8. apart from　除开，除了
9. neither of us　指我们两人都不，两人以上用 none of us
10. reach　到达，不用任何介词
11. do you speak...　你会讲…，=can you speak...

【习题】

Ⅰ. 用动词正确形式

1. He asked for a glass of water when he ________(finish)lunch.
2. The plane ________(take) off(起飞)when I had fastened my seat belt. (扣紧座位上的安全带)
3. She took a taxi after it ________(begin) to rain.

4. He ________(arrive) after all the guests (客人) ________ (leave).

5. She went to the post office as soon as he ________(write) the letter.

6. I understood the problem after he ________(explain) it.

7. I ________(buy) this car after I ________(borrow) some money from the bank.

8. I ________(not know) what kind of a country she is until I came to England.

9. I ________(not, see) Mike until yesterday.

10. She ________(not, agree) to do it until we asked her three times.

11. He ________(not, notice) the difference(不同之处)until he compared(比较)them three times.

12. She ________(not, notice) it until we had pointed it out. (注意本句 had 在 until 之后)

13. I ________(not, enjoy) my tea until I had put in more sugar.

14. He ________(come) in before I had done half the work. (注意本句用 before)

15. He was sick because he ________(eat) too much chocolate.

Ⅱ. 选择填空

( ) 1. I said good morning ________ he had got into the car.

a. just after　　b. a moment before

c. before　　d. a long time after

( ) 2. He asked for a lift. He was a ________.

a. hike-hitcher　　b. hitch-hiker

c. passenger　　d. driver

( ) 3. He had ________ reached the town when the young man ________.

a. nearly…spoken　　b. almost…sayed

c. almost…spoke　　d. just…spook

(   ) 4. He replied in French. He ________ the driver in French.

a. answered to   b. replied

c. answered   d. returned

(   ) 5. Neither of us listened to the radio. We ________.

a. neither listened to it   b. either listened to it

c. both didn't listen to it   d. neither didn't listen to it

(   ) 6. The two men did not speak to each other during the journey because they each thought ________ was French.

a. another   b. others

c. the another   d. the other

(   ) 7. The young man stopped the car because he wanted a free(免费) ride ________.

a. by the car   b. in the car

c. with the car   d. for the car

(   ) 8. I do not know any French at all. I know ________ French at all.

a. not   b. no

c. nothing   d. a few

(   ) 9. I speak a few words of French. I don't know ________ French.

a. much   b. many

c. plenty of   d. a little

(   )10. After what ________ (happen) he could not continue to work there.

a. was happened   b. happening

c. had happened   d. will happen

19 *Everything Except the Weather**

什么都考虑到就是没有考虑到天气

> He ***had hardly had time to*** settle down ***when*** he ***sold*** the house and ***left*** the country.

本课重点 过去完成式所特有的若干句型（Ⅱ）

My old friend, Harrison, ***had lived*** in the Mediterranean for many years ***before*** he returned to England. He ***had*** often ***dreamed of*** retiring in England and ***had planned*** to settle down in the country.

我的老朋友哈里森，在他回到英国之前，曾住在地中海地区有好多年了。他经常渴望到英国退休并计划在这个国家定居下来。

He ***had no sooner*** returned ***than*** he bought a fine house and

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第38课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第71页。

went to live there. Almost immediately he began to complain about the weather, for even though it was still summer, it rained continually and it was often bitterly cold. After so many years of sunshine, Harrison got a shock. He acted as if he ***had*** never ***lived*** in England before.
他刚回到英国就买了一幢很好的房子并且就住了进去。他几乎马上对天气开始埋怨起来了，因为即使是在夏天，也不断地下雨而且经常冷得要命。在阳光充足的地区生活了那么多年之后，哈里森感到震惊。他的一举一动就好像他过去从未在英国呆过似的。
In the end, it was more than he could bear. He ***had hardly had time to*** settle down ***when*** he sold the house and left the country. The dream he ***had had*** for so many years ended there. Harrison ***had thought of*** everything except the weather.
到头来，他实在吃不消了。他还没有来得及定居下来他就把房子卖掉并离开了英国。他做了这么多年的梦就这样结束了. 哈里森什么都考虑到了，就是没有考虑到天气。

【讲解】

1. 有若干句型与过去完成式形影不离。本课所列举的有下列几种：

2) had hardly had time to...when...
   （had hardly had time to：还来不及；when：就）

3) He acted as if he had...
   他的动态似乎他…

4) had lived...before he returned to...
   在他回到…之前就曾经住在…

例 1) ***No sooner had*** he gone to sleep ***than*** the telephone ***rang*** once more.
   他刚睡着，电话铃又响了。

2) He ***had no sooner*** reached the door ***than*** he ***came*** back.

他刚走到门口就走回来了。

3) He ***had hardly had time to*** realize what was happening ***when*** she pushed him out of the room.

他还来不及弄清发生了什么事，突然她把他推出房间去。

4) He ***acted as if he had*** done something great.

他一举一动好像他做了一件什么了不起的事似的。

5) I ***had*** written him three letters ***before*** he wrote back.

在他回我信之前我曾写给他三封信。

6) They ***had*** lived in many countries ***before*** they settled in England.

在他们定居英国之前，他们曾在许多国家住过。

7)

I ***had hardly*** opened the door when he ***hit*** me on the head.

我刚开门他就一拳打在我的头上。

We ***had hardly*** arrived ***when*** it ***began*** to snow.

我们刚到就开始下雪了。

Hardly had we arrived ***when*** we ***had*** to go back.

我们刚到就不得不返回。

2. no sooner...than，这个 than 很多人好像都喜欢写 then，似乎认为 then 比 than"说得通"。可是这毕竟是固定的搭配，不能以自己的想像来代替。

【语言材料】

1. return to　回到
2. plan to　打算，计划
3. settle down　定居下来

4. almost immediately　几乎马上
5. complain about　埋怨，抱怨
6. even though　即使
7. continually　不断（有间隙性停顿）
8. be bitterly cold　冷得要命
9. get a shock　感到震惊
10. in the end　最后
11. be more than one can bear　使某人受不了，吃不消
12. have dream　做梦
13. think of　考虑到
14. 关于 continually 这个词，常与 continuously 相混淆。前者是有间隙停顿的"不断"，后者则是有连续性的"不断"。

例 The baby is continually crying.　婴儿不断地哭。
　 The river flows continuously.　河水不断地流。

【习题】

I．选择填空

( ) 1. He had lived in Scotland for fifteen years ________ he came to England.
　a. when　　b. before
　c. after　　d. as soon as

( ) 2. He ________ in Scotland fifteen years ago.
　a. had lived　　b. lived
　c. has been living　　d. has lived

( ) 3. He ________ from home five days before.
　a. had run away　　b. ran away
　c. had been run away　　d. did run away

( ) 4. ________ set out than a thunderstorm ________.
　a. No sooner we had…broke
　b. We had no sooner…broke
　c. We hardly had…broke

d. Hardly had we...broke

( ) 5. We had hardly arrived there ________ Mr Jack ________ about the weather.

a. than...complained

b. than...began to complain

c. when...had begun to complain

d. when...began to complain

( ) 6. The water has been boiling ________ for about fifteen minutes.

a. occasionally　　b. frequently

c. continuously　　d. continually

( ) 7. It was more than he could bear. He couldn't ________ it.

a. stand　　b. suffer

c. put up　　d. carry

( ) 8. He ________ as if he had never lived in England before.

a. act　　b. acts

c. behaved　　d. did

( ) 9. It rained continually. It ________.

a. stopped occasionally

b. hardly rained

c. never stopped

d. rained heavily

( ) 10. He couldn't bear the weather ________.

a. any longer　　b. no more

c. more　　d. anything more it

( ) 11. Harrison had made plans ________ he went back to England.

a. before　　b. after

c. as soon as　　d. when

( ) 12. I lived in England a few years ________, but I had never lived in Scofland ________.

a. before...ago

b. ago...before

c. later...ago

d. earlier…two months ago

( ) 13. She ________ a year ago, but she ________ before.

a. was ill…has never ill

b. was ill…has never been ill

c. illed…had never been illed

d. was ill…had never been ill

( ) 14. Hardly had he begun to speak ________ the students ________ him.

a. than…stopped　　b. when…stopped

c. when…leaved　　d. than…all laughed at

( ) 15. Mr Harrison ________ she ________.

a. no sooner had sat down than…got up

b. had no sooner sat down when…stepped in

c. had hardly reached there when…ringed him up

d. had no sooner seen the lightning than…heard a loud thundering

20 *After the Fire**

火灾之后

had been＋ing ＋	① when＋动词简单过去式
	② before＋动词简单过去式
	③ for the last＋数字(时间)

本课重点 过去完成进行式的三个基本句型

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第62课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第117页。

Firemen ***had been fighting*** the forest fire for nearly three weeks ***before*** they ***could*** get it under control.
消防队员在把火灾控制住之前**一直**与森林大火搏斗了近三个星期。
A short time before, great trees had covered the countryside for miles around. Now, smoke still rose up from the warm ground over the desolate hills. Winter was coming on and the hills threatened the surrounding villages with destruction, for heavy rain would not only wash away the soil but would cause serious floods as well.

不久前，大树覆盖了这个乡村方圆数英里的地方。现在，在一些荒芜的小山上，灼热的地面仍然冒着浓烟。冬天快到了，这些小山对周围的村庄具有毁灭性的威胁，因为大雨将不仅冲走土壤，并将引起严重的水灾。
When the fire had at last been put out, the forest authorities ordered several tons of a special type of grass-seed which would grow quickly. The seed was sprayed over the ground in huge quantities by aeroplanes.
当火灾终于被扑灭后，森林管理当局定购了好几吨特种速生草籽，飞机把这些草籽大量地撒在地面上。
The planes ***had been planting*** seed for nearly a month ***when*** it began to rain. By then, however, in many places the grass had already taken root. In place of the great trees which ***had been growing*** there for centuries, patches of green had begun to appear in the blackened soil.

飞机**一直在**播种草籽已近一个月，**突然**天开始下雨了。不过到天开始下雨前，在很多地方，草早已扎下了根。在那里**一直**生长了好几个世纪的大树虽被烧毁，但在这片被熏黑了的土地上，代之而起的却是一块块绿色的草地。

【讲解】

过去完成式与下列三种句型连用：

1. had been doing＋when…＋动词简单过去式：

   本课：The planes ***had been planting*** seed for nearly a month ***when*** it ***began*** to rain.
   （突然）

   例 I ***had been reading when*** I ***heard*** steps outside.

   我**一直在**读书之时，突然，我听到外边有脚步声。

   比较：I ***was reading when*** I ***heard*** steps outside.

   我**正在**读书之际，忽然听到外边有脚步声。

2. had been doing＋before…＋动词简单过去式：

   本课：Fireman ***had been fighting*** the forest fire for nearly three weeks ***before*** they ***could*** get it under control.

   例 He ***had been working*** in a factory for years ***before*** he ***got*** this job.

   在他得到这个工作之前，他**一直在**一家工厂里工作有多年了。

3. He ***had been working for*** that firm ***for the last*** ten years.

   十年**来**，他**一直**受雇于那家公司。（讲这句话时，是指五十年代，或六十年代的情况）

   如：Empress Ci-Xi ***had been living*** in the Summer Palace ***for the last*** two months.

   两个月**以来**，西太后**一直**住在颐和园。（叙述过去情况）

   上面两句话不能用 since 代用 for the last…

   但可以说：

He had been working for that firm for five years (since his marriage).

【语言材料】

1. get...under control　把…控制住
2. for miles around　方圆有五英里
3. rise up　升起
4. come on　临近
5. threaten...with　以…相威胁;对…具有…的威胁
6. not only...but...as well　不但…而且(用到 as well 不能再用 but also,只能用 but)
7. be put out　被扑灭
8. special type of　特种的
9. in huge quantities　大量地
10. take root　扎根
11. in place of　代替
12. for centuries　有好几个世纪了
13. patches of　一块一块的

【习题】

选择填空

(　) 1. I asked him what ________ all afternoon.

a. he was doing　　b. he has been doing

c. he had been doing　　d. had he been doing

(　) 2. The hill threatened the surrounding villages with destruction. The villages ________.

a. were destroyed　　b. could destroy

c. might be destroyed　　d. had destroyed

(　) 3. The planes ________ nearly a month to plant the seed

a. did　　b. made

c. took　　d. spent

( ) 4. The trees had been there ________.

a. since centuries　　b. for centuries

c. centuries long　　d. before centuries.

( ) 5. Heavy rain would wash away the soil. It would ________.

a. wash it　　b. carry it away

c. clean it　　d. wash it clean

( ) 6. The seed had already taken root. It had begun to ________.

a. grow up　　b. raise

c. root　　d. grow

( ) 7. Patches of green had begun to appear. There was green grass ________.

a. everywhere　　b. only in one or two places

c. in one place　　d. here and there

( ) 8. I had been studying for years before I ________ a doctor.

a. became　　b. had become

c. to be　　d. has become

( ) 9. She ________ the mountain for hours before they reached the top.

a. was climbing　　b. climbed

c. had been climbing　　d. had already climbed on

( ) 10. They were surprised to find that the plants ________.

a. had already took root　　b. had already rise up

c. had taken root　　d. had patches of root

( ) 11. It was not long before they ________ the flood waters(洪水) ________.

a. had got…under control　　b. got…under control

c. put out…in huge quantities　　d. had put…out.

( ) 12. After he ________ the light he went out.

a. had been put out　　b. had put out

c. put out　　d. had putted out

( ) 13. Mr Henry talked at the meeting ________ Mr. White, because

Mr White was sick.

a. in place for　　b. in place of

c. in the place　　d. in place with

(　) 14. Come and sit on this ________ of grass.

a. patch　　b. place

c. soil　　d. ground

(　) 15. They often buy things ________.

a. in large quantities　　b. in huge qualities

c. for miles around　　d. to wash away

21 *The Olympic Games**

奥林匹克运动会

> Workers ***will have*** completed the roads ***by the end of this year.***

本课重点： 将来完成式及其相应的时间状语

The Olympic Games will be held in our country in four years' time. As a great many people ***will be visiting*** the country, the government ***will be building*** new hotels, an immense stadium, and a fine new swimming pool.

四年之后奥运会将在我国举行。由于很多人**准备**要来这个国家访问，政府**打算**建造新的旅馆，一个巨大的露天大型运动场和一个漂亮的新游泳池。

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第37课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)69页。

They ***will also be building*** new roads and a special railway-line. The Games will be held just outside the capital and the whole area will be called "Olympic City".

他们还**准备**建造新的马路和一条专用铁路线。运动会就在首都旁边的地方举行，整个地区将被叫作"奥运城"。

Workers ***will have completed*** the new roads ***by the end of this year. By the end of next year,*** they ***will have finished*** work on the new stadium.

到今年年底之前工人们将把新的马路都铺好了。到明年年底之前他们就将完成新的运动场的建筑工程。

The fine modern buildings have been designed by Kurt Gunter. Everybody ***will be watching*** anxiously as the new buildings go up. We are all very excited and are looking forward to the Olympic Games because they have never been held before in this country.

那些漂亮而现代化的建筑物已由库尔脱·根特设计出来。在这些新建筑物拔地而起的过程中大家都**会**焦急地看着。我们都感到很兴奋，盼望着奥运会的到来，因为以前在这个国家从未举行过奥运会。

【讲解】

如果我说：

"到这个月月底之前，你**将已**学了二十课了。"

=You ***will have learned*** twenty lessons ***by the end of this***

month.

“到上个月底之前你**已学**了十课了。”

=You ***had learned*** twenty lessons ***by the end of last month.***

他们一年之后**将把**这座桥造**好**了。

=They ***will have finished*** this bridge ***in a year's time.***

到那时,(比方说到1998年)他们俩人**将把**这部小说写**成**了。

=They ***will*** both ***have completed*** this novel ***by then.***

明天这个时候(比方说明天的下午四点)他们的答复我**将已**收到**过了**。

=I ***shall have received*** their reply ***by this time tomorrow.***

以上所举各条,一些时间状语都属于将来某时之后、之前一段时间内,这样更明确地衬托 shall have 的内涵。

我曾向学生举过一个例子:“等到你来伸手帮我一把,我都饿死**过了**”。他们到现在都记得,并且还互相用英语来讲这一句型:

I ***shall have starved*** to death ***by the time*** you lend me a hand.

你看,***shall have, will have*** 不是与一些特定的时间状语有着密切的关系吗?

这里要讲一下 in...'s(s')time (如:in a year's time, in two years' time)是指一年之后,两年之后。如

两个月之后,我就搬**进**一所新房子去住了。

=I ***shall have moved*** to a new house ***in two months' time.***

★下面作一比较:

① They ***will finish*** this bridge ***next year.***
他们要到明年建成这座桥。(但不一定有把握)

② They ***will have finished*** this bridge ***in a year's time.***
一年**之后**他们就把这座桥造**好**了。(有把握)

① I *shall complete* this novel *next June.*
明年六月我要写完这本小说。(仅仅是一种意图)

② I *shall have completed* this novel *by next June.*
明年六月**之前**我就把这本小说**杀青**了。(完全能脱稿)

如果你是细心人,你一定会悟到 by(指以前),in...'s(s')time(指之后)多用在 shall have, will have 的句型中。by the end of *last*...,则一定与 had+过去分词相连用。

【语言材料】

1. will be held　将举行(或 will take place)
2. in four years' time　四年之后
3. a great many　许多
4. work on...　关于…的建筑工程
5. go up　拔地而起
6. be excited　感到兴奋(不能用 exciting)
7. look forward to　期待,盼望(to 是介词)
8. The Olympic Games　Games 不能写成 Game,要复数

【习题】

选择填空

( ) 1. "Haven't you finished your work yet?"
"No, but I ________ my work by this time tomorrow."
a. will finish　　b. will be finished
c. must to finish　　d. shall have finished

( ) 2. "Haven't you heard from him yet?"
"No, but I shall have heard from him ________."
a. by the end of last month
b. by the end of last week
c. the next week
d. by next week

( ) 3. We are all very excited. ________ are very excited.

a. All we　　　　b. We all

c. Us all　　　　d. All of us

( ) 4. We are looking forward to ________ the Olympic Games.

a. take part in　　　　b. taking part in

c. have taken part in　　　　d. hold

( ) 5. How often do we ________ the Olympic Games?

a. have　　　　b. play in

c. play　　　　d. make

( ) 6. They are looking forward to the games. So they will be ________ when they begin.

a. happily　　　　b. pleased

c. pleasant　　　　d. pleasing

( ) 7. How ________ they are! They like watching football matches so much.

a. exciting　　　　b. excitingly

c. so exciting　　　　d. excited

( ) 8. Workers will have completed the new roads by the end of this year. They ________.

a. haven't finished yet

b. have already finished

c. will be finished soon

d. are not sure to finish them

( ) 9. I shall have completed this novel ________ December.

a. in　　　　b. by the

c. at　　　　d. by

( )10. They will have finished this building in ________ time.

a. one year　　　　b. two years

c. three year's　　　　d. four years'

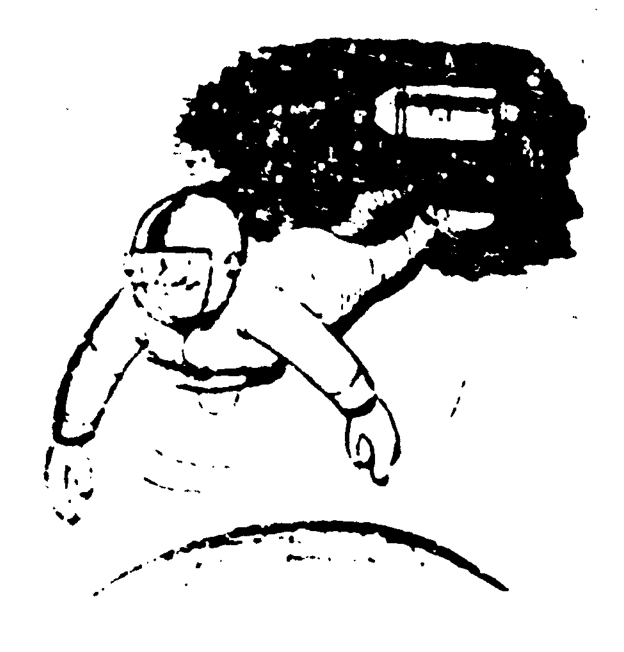
22 *Dangerous Descent**

危险的出舱活动

> *By* that time, the Astra ***will have been flying*** through space for seventeen hours...

本课重点 将来完成进行式的概念及时间状语

In future, astronauts will be required to descend from a spaceship while it is still in space and to return to it. The ability to do this will be necessary in future flights to distant planets. Scientists are now trying to discover if this is possible.



到将来，人们将要求宇航员在飞船停在太空时从飞船里走下来并且再回到里面去。在将来向遥远的行星飞行时就需要有这样做的能力。科学家们目前正在试图发现有没有这种可能性。

The spaceship Astra which left the earth a short time ago, will be travelling three hundred miles into space. At a certain point, the Astra will stop for a short time and an astronaut will attempt to leave the stationary spaceship and then return to it.

不久前离开地球的阿斯屈拉号飞船准备飞行三百英里进入太空。阿

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第 2 册第 61 课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第 116 页。

斯屈拉号将在某一地点稍停片刻，而宇航员将试图离开静止的宇宙飞船然后再回到里面去。

We shall not know whether the experiment has been successful until we have received a radio message. The first message is expected to arrive at 7 o'clock this evening. ***By*** that time, the Astra ***will have been flying*** through space for seventeen hours and ***will have circled*** the earth a great many times. When the first radio message have been received, the results of the trip will be announced immediately.

直到我们接收到了无线电信息时才会知道试验是否已成功。第一次信息预计在今晚七点到达。到七点钟**之前**一段时间，阿斯屈拉号**将一直**穿越太空飞行了有十七个小时，同时也将环绕地球**转过**好多圈了。一俟第一次电报收到时就将立即宣布这次飞行的结果。

【讲解】

Will have been doing 很简单＝将一直进行了…有多少时间。

比较：(注意时间状语)

① I ***shall have*** finished this novel { ***in*** two months' ***time***. / ***by*** December. }

二个月之后 / 到十二月之前 } 我就把这本小说写成了。

② I ***shall have been*** writing this novel ***for ten years by*** then (***by*** next July).

到那时**之前**(十二月之前) / 到明年七月**之前** } 我**将一直**写这本小说**有**十年之久了。

下列句子为错句：(语意混乱)

1. They ***will have been*** working on their project in a year's time. (一直从事他们的项目有多久呢？没有反映出来，所以谈不到"一直")
   (他们将一直 — will have been；从事他们的项目 — working on their project)

但可以说：They ***will have carried*** their project ***to completion***

in a year's time.

一年之后，他们将圆满完成他们的项目。

2. The poet will have been died for more than five hundred years by next year.

   这位诗人到明年(之前)将一直死了有五百多年了。("死"在英语中可不能"一直死"，这个动词不能有延续性，死了就终结了，还能死个不停？所以 died 要换用表示死的状态用词：dead。)

3. 将来完成进行式在使用中的频率是不高的。我们只要了解这种表达法的概念和有关的注意点就行了。尤其要注意本课将来完成式和将来完成进行式交叉使用的例句(在课文最后几行)，这将有助于你明确概念，进一步掌握其句法。

【语言材料】

1. ability　能力，这个词不用介词 of，用 to＋不定式作为定语。

   比较：
   - Has he the ability ***of doing*** the work？(误)
   - Has he the ability ***to do*** the work？(正)

2. will be travelling　准备(打算)飞行
3. attempt to　试图
4. station***a***ry　静止不动的，station***e***ry：文具，信笺
5. a radio message　无线电信息(可能是明文，可能是密码)
6. be expected to　预计…
7. a great many times　许多许多次
8. descent　是名词，下降，动词是 descend，上升是 ascent，(*n*)，ascend，(*v*)
9. 注意一种 shall not(won't)...until＋have 句型

   I hope you ***won't*** do anything ***until*** we'***ve*** all thought it over.

   我希望你在我们大家都考虑过之后再采取行动。

   We ***shan't*** sign the agreement ***until*** we'***ve*** got the information.

一俟我们获得有关信息我们才会签订协议。

对照本课：We ***shall not...until*** we ***have...***句型：

We ***shall not*** know whether the experiment has been successful ***until*** we ***have*** received a radio message.

【习题】

I 选译填空

( ) 1. The ability to do this will be necessary. They ________ be able to do it .

a. will be having to　　b. will have to

c. had to　　d. will must

( ) 2. They will know it has been successful when they ________ a message.

a. will have received　　b. will be receiving

c. will receive　　d. have received

( ) 3. The first message is expected to arrive at seven o'clock. That's when it's ________ to arrive.

a. planning　　b. due

c. about　　d. wanting

( ) 4. They will attempt to leave. That's what they'll ________ to do.

a. make　　b. try

c. have to　　d. be able

( ) 5. This is an experiment. The astronauts will be ________.

a. trying something on　　b. trying something out

c. trying something in　　d. trying something up

( ) 6. The spaceship will be stationary. It will be ________.

a. unmoved　　b. still

c. stationery　　d. moving

( ) 7. It will have circled the earth a great many times. It will have ________ it.

a. surrounded　　b. gone cirling

c. cycled　　d. gone round

(　) 8. We won't know whether it will be successful. We won't know whether there will be good ________.

a. effects　　b. affects

c. results　　d. causes

(　) 9. That spaceship will still be circling the earth in two weeks' time. By then it ________ the earth for three months.

a. will be circling　　b. will have been circling

c. will circle　　d. is going to go round

(　) 10. They'll still be building this bridge in a year's time. By then they will have been building this bridge ________.

a. in a year's time　　b. in two years time

c. for three years　　d. this time next year

Ⅱ 中译英：

1. 八年之后，他们将建**成**这座铁路隧道。(railway tunnel)
2. 到明年年底之前，他们**将一直**建造这座铁路隧道有三年时间了。
3. 一俟我们买到票我们**才能**进入这个博物馆。(not...until)
4. 他有解这道题的**能力**而她则没有。(ability)

23　*Not For Jazz*

不是用来弹爵士音乐的

Recently it ***was damaged*** by a visitor

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第 2 册第 10 课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第 17 页。

本课重点 被动态(be)三式 (I)

We have an old musical instrument. It ***is called*** a clavichord. It ***was made*** in Germany in 1681. Our clavichord ***is kept*** in the living-room. It has belonged to our family for a long time. The instrument ***was bought*** by my grandfather many years ago.

我们有一件古老乐器，叫做击弦古钢琴，它是德国在1681年制造的。我们这台古琴保存在客厅里，它多少年来就已是我们家的财产了。这件乐器还是我的祖父在许多年以前买来的。

Recently it ***was damaged*** by a visitor. She tried to play jazz on it! She struck the keys too hard and two of the strings were broken. My father was shocked. Now we ***are*** not ***allowed*** to touch it. It ***is being repaired*** by a friend of my father's.

不久前，它被一位客人搞坏了。她想在这台琴上弹奏爵士音乐！她按键太重以致两根弦断裂了。我的父亲感到震惊，现在他不允许我们去碰它了。目前正由我父亲的一位朋友修理它。

【讲解】

1. 这里讲的是"be"所引起的被动结构，这很简单，只有三种形式：
   1) is (are)＋过去分词　is called
   2) was (were)＋过去分词　was made
   3) is (was) / are (were) } being＋过去分词　it is (was) being repaired
2. 注意 being 的使用：

They ***are building*** a new road outside my house.
≠A new road ***is built*** outside my house.
=A new road ***is being built***（省略 by them）outside my house.
（正在被修筑中）

3. being 不用在完成式中：

   A new road ***has been being built*** outside my house.
   （讲不通）

4. 注意有的被动态形式不一定是被动态，而是系动词＋表语，称为系表结构。这种表语就是过去分词形式起形容词作用。

例

two of the strings ***were broken.***
断了（系表）

my father ***was shocked.***
（感到 震惊）

5. 中国学生常常碰到用 belong to（属于）的结构时，误用成 be belong to，这大概也是因为汉语的干扰，同时不知道 belong 是一个动词而不是一个形容词，这个词不用被动态。

   “中国属于第三世界。”不能说 China ***is belong to*** the Third World，而应该用 China ***belongs to*** the Third Word，至于 China ***is belonged to*** the Third World 也是错的。

【语言材料】

1. musical instrument　乐器
2. has belonged to　已属于…
3. recently　这个词如果与过去式句子相连用，就等于 not long ago（不久前），如与完成式句子连用，就等于 lately（近来，最近）。

例 Have you seen Alice recently?

你**最近**见过艾丽斯吗？

I ran into Alice in the Fifth Avenue recently.

不久前我在第五街撞见过艾丽斯。

4. be damaged　是说被弄坏了，但还可以修理。另有一词与 damage 相仿，但解释彻底弄毁了，不可修复，这个词就是 destroy.

例 Many historical records were destroyed. 许多历史档案被彻底消毁了。

5. be allowed to 被允许…,后面 to 不可丢。

6. a friend of my father's 这种说法与 a friend of my father 有区别。

   a friend of my father's = one of my father's friends.

   我父亲的一个朋友。

   a friend of my father = my father's friend.

   我父亲的朋友(泛指)。

   我的一个朋友 = a friend of mine. 她的一个朋友 = a friend of hers.

【习题】

选择填空

( ) 1. We are not allowed to touch it. We ________ touch it.

a. mustn't　　b. cannot allowed to

c. don't have to　　d. haven't got to

( ) 2. The visitor damaged it. She ________ it.

a. destroyed　　b. broke

c. hurt　　d. struck

( ) 3. Recently it was damaged. She damaged it ________.

a. late　　b. lastly

c. finally　　d. not long ago

( ) 4. Recently the piano has been damaged. Someone has damaged it ________.

a. not long ago　　b. lately

c. finally　　d. late

( ) 5. A friend of his = ________.

a. His friend　　b. His good friend

c. His only friend　　d. One of his friends

( ) 6. My father has ________ the clavichord for many years.

a. bought b. had

c. brought up d. bought in

( ) 7. "Are they repairing you car?"

"Yes, my car ________."

a. has repaired by them b. is repairing

c. is being repaired d. is repaired

( ) 8. "Tell me about those trees. Are they ________?"

"Yes, those trees are being cut down."

a. cutting down them b. cuting down them

c. cuting them down d. cutting them down

( ) 9. "Tell me about the bridge. Did they build it in 1989?"

"Yes, the bridge ________ in 1989."

a. was being built b. did be built

c. has been built d. was built

( ) 10. Workers were allowed to organize ________ on strike.

a. and go b. and go to street

c. and went d. and to go

24 *Mad or Not?**

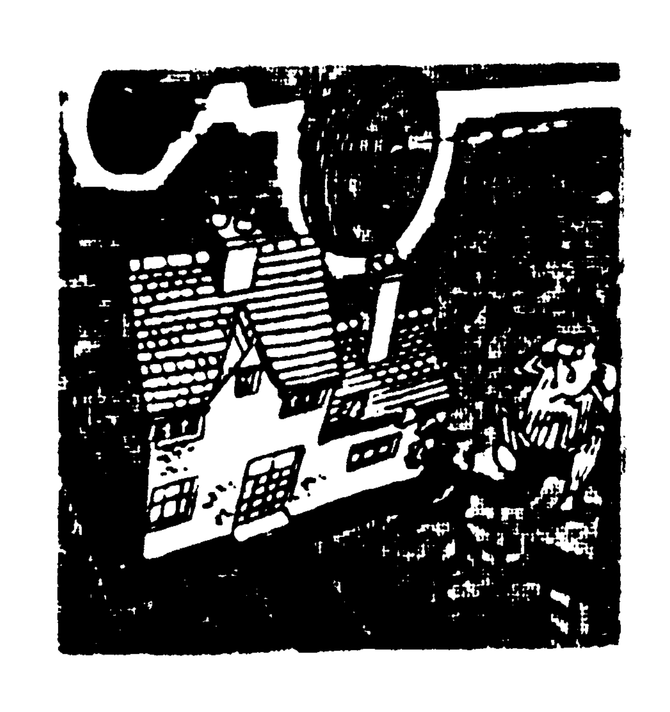
疯了还是没有疯？

...passing planes ***can be heard*** night and day. it ***came into use***.

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第 2 册第 21 课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第 38 页。

本课重点 情态动词及其被动式。特别注意点：must have been，must be 及 come into use(Ⅱ).



Aeroplanes are slowly driving me mad. I live near an airport and passing planes ***can be heard*** night and day. The airport ***was built*** during the war, but for some reason it ***could*** not ***be used*** then. Last year, however, it ***came into use.***

飞机在慢慢地驱使我发疯了。我住在机场附近，日夜都能听到过往的飞机声。机场是在战争期间建造的，但是由于某种原因，那时不能被使用。然而去年机场**开始被使用了**。

Over a hundred people ***must have been*** driven away from their homes by the noise. I am one of the few people left. Sometimes I think this house ***will be*** knocked down by a passing plane.

有一百多人**谅必**被噪音从家里赶跑了。我是留下来的仅有几个人当中的一个。有时候我想这所房子会被一架过往的飞机撞倒的。

I ***have been offered*** a large sum of money to go away, but I am determined to stay here. Everybody says I ***must be*** mad and they are probably right.

已经有人向我提供了一大笔搬家费，但是我决心呆在这里。大家说我**说不定**疯了，也许他们是对的。

【讲解】

1. 情态动词组成被动式很简单：情态动词＋be＋过去分词。我们可以用 shall be，will be ，should be，ought to be，can be，must be＋过去分词。

本课选用 can be heard.

2. 特别要指出的就是 must have been，must be 这两种表达法，既可以用作被动式，又不是被动式。

(A)被动式：

He ***must have*** been arrested by the police.

他**谅必**被警察逮捕了。(指过去)

It ***must be*** kept in mind.

这件事务必记在心上。

(B) 不是被动式：

He ***must have been plaesed*** with my work.

他**谅必**对我的工作感到满意。(指过去)

He ***must be*** a teacher.

他**说不定**是个教师。(指眼下，目前)

must have (指过去) must be (指现在)

例 They ***must have*** gone to England five days before.

他们**谅必**五天前出国去了。

She ***must be*** doing her homework upstairs.

她说不定(现在)在楼上做作业。

must have ——→cannot have 不见得

must be ——→cannot be 不一定(也可用 mustn't be)

3. 本课有一种在字面上看不出是被动式却有被动内涵的表达，另有一种字面上是被动式却不是被动的表达，这方面头脑里必须要十分清楚。

1) ...however, it came into use.

所谓 come into use 是开始**被**使用的意思，句子中看不出有"被"。

例 The new machine will ***come into use*** next week.

新机器将在下周**开始被使用**。

2) ...I am determined to stay here.

be determined to. 看来似被动式其实不是，这个 be 后面的 determined 是作形容词用的，表示"决心"。

例 I ***was determined*** not ***to*** follow their advice.

我决定不听他们的建议。

下面是错句：

The road is wet, it must be raining last night.
马路很湿，昨晚谅必下过雨了。
应： The road is wet, it ***must have*** rained last night.

They ***must be*** playing tennis when you ***phoned***.
当你打电话时他们谅必在打网球。(phoned 已是过去式)
应： They ***must have been*** playing tennis when you ***phoned***.

Judging by the smell, the food ***must have been*** good.
从香味看来，这东西**说不定**很好吃。(现场讲话)
应： Judging by the smell, the food ***must be*** good.

【语言材料】

1. drive *sb* mad　驱使人发疯
2. night and day　日夜
3. for some reason　由于某种原因
4. come into use　开始被使用
5. must have　谅必
6. knock down　撞倒
7. a large sum of　一大笔(或 large sums of)
8. be determined to　决定，
9. must be　说不定，恐怕是

【习题】

选择填空

(　) 1. He ________ looked down upon(看不起)by his boss when he was young.

a. must be　　　b. must have

c. cannot be　　　　d. must have been

(　) 2. Now your brother ________ anxious to know the particulars.（细节）

a. must have been　　　　b. must

c. must have　　　　d. must be

(　) 3. It's a quarter past three. He ________ in by now.

a. must have been　　　　b. must be

c. cannot　　　　d. cannot have been

(　) 4. He ________ arrived by air yesterday.

a. must be　　　　b. must have

c. should be　　　　d. probablly

(　) 5. She ________ not to be the first to speak of it.

a. determind　　　　b. was determined

c. was decided　　　　d. made her minds up

(　) 6. How long is it since the electronic computer（电子计算机）________?

a. was come into use　　　　b. come into use

c. had been come into use　　　　d. came into use

(　) 7. It couldn't be used then. It wasn't ________ to use it.

a. impossible　　　　b. necessary

c. allowed　　　　d. possible

(　) 8. Over a hundred people must have been driven away. ________ they were.

a. I think　　　　b. I'm sure

c. I'm certain　　　　d. Of course

(　) 9. How much ________? A large sum of money.

a. you have been offered　　　　b. you have offered

c. have you been offered　　　　d. they offered you

(　) 10. I have been offered a large ________ of money.

a. number　　　　b. piece

c. amount　　　　d. qualities

(　) 11. Tell me about the missing bag. Do you think someone ________

it?

a. must be stealing　　b. must stealing

c. has to steal　　d. must have stolen

(　) 12. "Does he have to write the letter again?"

"Yes, the letter ________ again"

a. has to write　　b. should to be written

c. must be wrote　　d. has to be written

(　) 13. I'm determined to stay here. I ________ stay here.

a. want to　　b. may

c. am going to　　d. intend

(　) 14. Everyone says I must be mad and they are probably right.

________ they are ________.

a. Perhap...O·K·　　b. May be...right

c. Maybe...fair　　d. Perhaps...correct

(　) 15. She ________ her wallet on her way home.

a. will lost　　b. must be lost

c. must have lost　　d. probably find

25 *Quick Work**

高效率

He ***was amused*** too. ...he ***was told*** by a smiling policeman that his bicycle ***had been*** found.

* 选自《新概念英语》第 2 册第 34 课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第 64 页。

本课重点　系表结构和被动态比较（Ⅲ）

Ted Robinson has been worried all the week. Last Tuesday he received a letter from the local police. In the letter ***he was asked*** to call at the station.

泰德·罗滨逊整整一周一直焦虑不安。上星期二，他收到寄自当地警察局的一封信，信中说要他到警察局去一下。

Ted wondered why ***he was wanted*** by the police, but he went to the station yesterday and now he is not worried any more. At the station, he ***was told*** by a smiling policeman that his bicycle ***had been found.*** Five days ago, the policeman told him, the bicycle ***was picked up*** in a small village four hundred miles away. It ***is*** now ***being sent*** to his home by train.

泰德不知道为什么警察局要他去，但是他昨天去到警察局，而现在他不再担忧了。在警察局里，一个满面笑容的警察告诉他，他的自行车已经被找到了。五天前，警察对他说，这辆自行车是在离开此地有四百英里的一个小村子里被拣到的。车子现在正在用火车被运送到他的家中来。

Ted was most surprised when he heard the news. He was amused too, because he never ***expected*** the bicycle ***to be found.*** It ***was stolen*** twenty years ago when Ted was a boy of fifteen!

当泰德听到这消息时感到很惊奇。他也感到好笑，因为他从未指望那辆自行车会被找到。那辆车是在二十年前泰德还是一个十五岁的孩子时就被偷走的！

【讲解】

1. 这篇课文虽然不长，但写这篇这章的人却是一位高手，他把各种

被动态都揉合在一起，而显得很自然，文章当然也十分幽默。

这里面还有一些看来有被动态形式但事实上却不是被动态的表达法，这一点还要特别留意。

2. has been worried（一直感到担心，焦虑），he is not worried any more（不再担心），was most surprised（感到大为惊奇），was amused（感到好笑），这些都不是被动态，是系表结构。

3. 总结三句话：

1)并不是所有动词都可以组成被动态。如：

happen, take place, come into use, worry，等等。

2)有的是被动态形式如：was amused, was surprised，而不是作被动态使用的。

3)有的看不出一点被动态形式却有被动内涵。如：come into use.

4. 要会用 is (was) being＋过去分词 的表达法。如：

It ***is*** now ***being*** sent to his home by train.
＝They are (The police are) sending it to his home by train.

所以：***Are*** they ***helping*** him?
回答应该说：Yes, he ***is being*** helped.

再如：***Are*** they ***sending*** him abroad?（打算派他出国吗?）
Yes, he ***is being*** sent abroad.（即将被派出国）

Was he ***following*** you?
Yes, I ***was being*** followed.（当时正被人跟踪）

【语言材料】

1. all the week　整整一周时间

2. be worried　感到担扰，焦虑不安

3. call at　去到什么地方，到…地方去一下（后接地方）

例 You'd better call at his office.（＝call in）

你最好到他的办公室去一下。

4. not...any more　不再

5. be picked up　拣到，找到

6. be most surprised　这个 most＝very much

7. be amused　感到好笑

8. expect *sb*. to do *sth*.　希望，指望什么人干什么事

expect *sth* to be done　指望某事会做成

注意下列三句：

...he never expected **the bicycle** / them　to be found. / to find the bicycle.

＝he never expected

＝he never expected

that { ***they would*** find the bicycle. / the bicycle would be found. }

【习题】

I 选择填空

(　) 1. At the station, a smiling policeman told him that ________.

a. they found the bicycle　　b. his bicycle was found

c. they had found his bicycle　　d. his bicycle was being found

(　) 2. Do you expect me ________ after class?

a. to be stayed　　b. to stay

c. to staying　　d. stay

(　) 3. Did they expect their car ________?

a. repairing　　b. to repair

c. was repaired　　d. to be repaired

(　) 4. He has been worried all the week and he's ________ worried.

a. still　　b. even

c. not　　d. any more

(　) 5. The bicycle was stolen. Ted was ________.

a. stolen　　b. stealing

c. taken　　d. robbed

( ) 6. She is amused. She ________.

a. must have laughed b. must be laughing

c. she must have shouted d. must be shouting

( ) 7. Ted was amused. Ted ________.

a. must be clapping b. must have cried

c. must be shouting d. must have laughed

( ) 8. The police wanted Ted to call at the station. They wanted him to ________ them.

a. call on b. call up

c. call in d. call at

( ) 9. Someone ________ it twenty years ago.

a. stolen b. stealed

c. stole d. has stealed

( ) 10. He never expected that the bicyle ________.

a. would find b. could find

c. would be found d. they would find

( ) 11. Ted Robinson has been worried all the week.

Something ________ all the week.

a. worried him b. was making him worry

c. was worried him d. has worried him

( ) 12. Ted wondered why he was wanted by the police.

Ted wondered why ________.

a. the police wanted him to call at them

b. the police wanted him

c. the police asked him

d. the police asked from him

( ) 13. He was amused. This ________ him.

a. amused b. interests

c. made him to laugh at d. caused to laugh at

( ) 14. The bicycle was picked up in a small village.

Someone ________ in a small village.

a. has picked it up b. has picked up it

c. picked it up　　d. picked up it

(　) 15. In the letter he was asked to call at the station. In the letter they ________ the station.

a. asked him to go　　b. wanted him go to

c. wanted him to call　　d. asked him to call in

26 *A Blessing in Disguise?**

祸中有福?

it is said that, ...is said to, there is said to be

本课重点　怎样用被动态表达“据说”,“据说有”?(Ⅳ)

The tiny village of Frinley ***is said to*** possess a “cursed tree”. Because the tree was mentioned in a newspaper, the number of visitors to Frinley has now increased. The tree was planted near a church fifty years ago, but it is only in recent years that it has gained an evil reputation.

弗林莱这个小村**据说**有一棵“该死的树”。因为这棵树在报纸上被人说起过,因此跑到弗林莱参

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第58课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第110页。

观的人数现在增多了。这棵树是在五十年前被人栽在教堂边上的，但是它已经获得了一个臭名这件事仅仅是最近几年才发生的。

It is said that if anyone touches the tree, he will have bad luck; if he picks a leaf, he will die. Many villagers believe that the tree has already claimed a number of victims. The vicar has been asked to have the tree cut down, but so far he has refused. He has pointed out that the tree is a useful source of income as tourists have been coming from all parts of the country to see it.

据说，只要谁摸一摸这棵树，他就要倒霉；只要谁摘一片树叶，他就要死。许多村民相信这棵树已丧了不少人的命。人们已经要求教区牧师叫人把这棵树砍掉，但迄今他都没有答应。他已指出：由于游客一直从全国各地来看这棵树，这棵树是一个用处很大的财源。

In spite of all that ***has been said***, the tourists have been picking leaves and cutting their names on the tree-trunk. So far, not one of them has been struck down by sudden death!

尽管大家已经说了许多有关这方面的情况，游客们却一直在摘树叶并且把他们的名字刻在树干上。到目前为止，游客中没有一个人曾经因突然死亡而被夺去生命！

【讲解】

1. “据说”是一种常用表达。一般学生都熟悉 It is said that he is a manager.（据说他是一位经理）却不大会用 He is said to be a manager，或 People (They) say (that) he is a manager.
2. 根据以上所述我们可以作如下归纳：

   1) People say he is a genius.

   （据说他是一个天才）

   =He is said ***to be*** a genius.

   =It is said that he is a genius.

   2) People say she has a diamond necklace.

(据说她有一条钻石项链)

=She is said ***to have*** a diamond necklace.

=It is said that she has a diamond necklace.

3) The tiny village of Frinley is said to possess a "cursed tree".

= They say (that) the tiny village of Frinley possesses a "cursed tree".

= It is said that the tiny village of Frinley possesses a "cursed tree".

4) It is said that there is oil under the North Sea.

(据说北海海底有石油)

=People say that there is oil under the North Sea.

=There is said ***to be*** oil under the North Sea.

★There is said ***to have*** oil under the North Sea. (误)

"据说有"不用 there is said to ***have***,"据说某某人有"可以说 He (she) is said to ***have...***

对比:
- She ***is said to have*** three TV sets. (据说她有…)
- She ***is said to have*** finished work. (据说她已经…)

【语言材料】

1. a blessing in disguise blessing 是福,幸运。in disguise 意思是伪装的,非真实的,经过化装的。表面上看起来很不顺心,很倒霉(这是一种非真实现象),而实际上却内里有福,这就叫做祸中有福=a blessing in disguise. 反之,表面上很幸福,实际上却内里有祸,这就是 a curse in disguise. 有的人拿贪污盗窃来的钱大肆挥霍,表面上看来很幸福,还有的人欺世盗名,通过种种不正当的手段得到不应得到的荣誉,表面上看来很了不起,这些人的行为都可以称之为 a scandal(丑闻) in disguise. 中文可以译为"荣耀其外,卑劣其中"。

2. It is...that 这是强调句型。强调的重点在 that 之前的部分。

例 It is you that are in danger(处于危险的是你)

It was a necklace that he wanted.（他所需要的不是别的正是一条项链）

3. if（后面用动词简单现在式）＋will　解释“只要…就…”

例　If he ***picks*** a leaf ,he ***will*** die.

If he ***goes*** there, he will ***get*** a surprise.

4. have…＋过去分词　这叫“使役结构”,（叫人）把…

例　I will have to ***have*** the bicycle ***repaired.***

我还得叫人把自行车修一修。

5. be struck down　被击倒在地。但在这里解释“夺去生命”。

例　He ***was struck down*** by (with) a heart attack.

他因心脏病而死去。

6. in spite of　尽管。in spite of [all] that has been said,

（形容 all）

【习题】

Ⅰ. 选择填空

( ) 1. ________ that Frinley has a “cursed tree”.

a. There is said to be　　b. It is said

c. They says　　d. It said

( ) 2. If anyone picks the leaves, he ________ die.

a. must have to　　b. would

c. will　　d. is sure

( ) 3. ________ all that has been said, they have been picking leaves.

a. In spite for　　b. Despite

c. Although　　d. Though

( ) 4. So far ________ of them has been struck down by sudden death.

a. no one　　b. not any

c. nobody　　d. none

(　) 5. The number of visitors has increased. The number has ________.

a. grown up　　b. overgrown

c. grown　　d. been rised

(　) 6. It has gained an evil reputation. It has a bad ________.

a. name　　b. fame

c. report　　d. saying

(　) 7. The cursed tree is ________ a source of income.

a. said to have　　b. said to be

c. said that it looks　　d. blessing in disguise and

(　) 8. There is said ________ gold under the church.

a. to have　　b. to posseses

c. that　　d. to be

(　) 9. ________ the tree is a source of income.

a. People says that　　b. It has said that

c. It is said that　　d. There is said that

(　) 10. They say that the tree has ________ an evil reputation.

a. won　　b. earned

c. gaind　　d. given

Ⅱ. 短句翻译

1. Shanghai ________.（据说是个大城市）
2. There ________ here.（据说这儿有一家商店）
3. It ________.（据说他已经去日本了）
4. Tourists ________.（据说是美国学生）
5. He ________.（他已拒绝叫人把树砍掉）

27 *Always Young**

青春常驻

It ***must be*** terrible to be grown up!

本课重点 情态动词 must，have to 的关系（Ⅰ）

My aunt Jennifer is an actress. She ***must be*** at least thirty-five years old. In spite of this, she often appears on the stage as a young girl. Jennifer ***will have to*** take part in a new play soon. This time, she will be a girl of seventeen.

我的姑妈詹尼弗是一位演员，她**大概**至少有三十五岁了。尽管如此，她经常登台扮演年轻姑娘。不久詹尼弗**还得**参加一出新戏的演出。这一次，她将扮演一个十七岁的姑娘。

In the play, she ***must*** appear in a bright red dress and long black stockings. Last year in another play, she ***had to*** wear short socks and a bright, orange-coloured dress. If anyone ever asks her how old she is, she always answers, "My dear, it ***must be*** terrible to be grown up!"

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第17课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第28页。

在这出戏中，她**必须**穿一身鲜红的衣裙和长统黑袜登上舞台。去年，在另一出戏上，她**必须**穿短袜和一身鲜艳的橙色衣裙。只要有人问她年龄多大时，她总是回答说，“亲爱的，人要长大了**说不定**是挺可怕的！”

【讲解】

1. must 用在现在式，had to 用在过去式。

   must be 用法是指目前，意思是“大概，说不定”，这是一种猜测或推论（deduction），而不是“一定”。

   例 I ***must*** leave ***now.***

   我现在必须走了。

   对比：I ***have to*** leave ***now.***（或 I ***have got to*** leave now）

   我现在得走了。（有必要）

2. ***Last night*** I ***had to*** do my homework.（正）

   Last night I ***must*** do my homework.（误）

   He ***said*** he ***must*** leave early.（正）

   （在间接引语中可用 must）

3. He ***must be*** a fool(mad, over forty)。

   他**说不定**是个傻子（是发疯了，年过四十了）。

4. 什么叫 have to？是说有必要。对比下列四组句子：

   a) You ***have to*** work hard。（有必要）

   =It is necessary for you to work hard.

   b) ***Have you got to*** make so much noise?（难道你非得…）

   =Is it necessary for you to make so much noise?

   c) He ***had to*** go out last night.（必须）

   =It was necessary for him to go out last night.

   d) I'***ll have to*** see a doctor.（还得）

   =It'll be necessary for me to see a doctor.

5. have to 的形式：（常用的）

   I have to　　Have I got to…　　{ I don't have to / I haven't got to }

I had to　Did I have to...?　I didn't have to

I'll have to　Shall I have to...?　I shan't have to

I would have to　Would I have to...?　I wouldn't have to

【语言材料】

1. at least　至少
2. appear on the stage as　登台演出扮演…角色
3. take part in　参加
4. to be grown up　grown up 这里作表语。长大成人

【习题】

选择填空

(　) 1. She must appear in a bright red dress. That's what she ________.

a. have to do　　b. has to do

c. had done　　d. has done

(　) 2. She had to wear short socks. It was ________ for her to wear them.

a. important　　b. possible

c. certain　　d. necessary

(　) 3. She is grown up. She is ________.

a. very old　　b. an adult

c. a teenager　　d. a middle-aged woman

(　)4. He had to take a taxi. ________ take a taxi?

a. Had he really to　　b. Had he really got to

c. Did he really had to　　d. Did he really have to

(　) 5. She's got to take part in a play. ________ take part in a play?

a. Has she really got to　　b. Does she really has to

c. Got she has to　　d. Got she to

(　) 6. You don't have to see a doctor. You ________ see a doctor.

a. mustn't　　b. haven't got to

c. needn't to　　　　　　　　d. are not necessary to go to

(　) 7. He's got to leave now. ________ necessary for you to leave now?

a. Does it　　　　　　　　b. Do you

c. Are you　　　　　　　　d. Is it

(　) 8. She'll have to appear on the stage. ________ for her to appear on the stage?

a. Will it necessary　　　　　b. Wouldn't necessary

c. Will it be necessary　　　　d. Does it necessary

(　) 9. I, personally, think she is at least thirty-five years old. She ________ at least thirty-five years old.

a. must have　　　　　　　b. must

c. has to be　　　　　　　d. must be

(　) 10. A: "Perhaps he is a teacher."

B: "Oh, yes, in my opinion, he is."

C: "He ________ a teacher."

a. must be　　　　　　　　b. likes

c. look likes　　　　　　　d. must have been

28 *Do You Call That a Hat?* *

你叫那个东西是一顶帽子吗？

needn't	needn't be	needn't have

* 选自《新概念英语》第 2 册第 41 课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第 77 页。

本课重点　情态动词 need 专论（Ⅱ）

"Do you call that a hat?" I said to my wife.

"You ***needn't be*** so rude about it," my wife answered as she looked at herself in the mirror.

"你叫那个东西是一顶帽子吗?" 我对我的妻子说。

"你**不必**这样无礼对待它,"我的妻子一面照着镜子一面回答说。

I sat down on one of those modern chairs with holes in it and waited. We had been in the hat shop for half an hour and my wife was still in front of the mirror.

"We ***mustn't*** buy things we ***don't need.*** " I remarked suddenly. I regretted saying it almost at once.

我坐在一把有网眼的新式椅子上等候着。我们一直呆在那家帽店有半个小时,而我的妻子仍然还对着镜子照。

"我们**绝对不要**买我们**不需要**的东西," 我突然说了这句话。我几乎立刻感到后悔说这句话。

"You ***needn't have*** said that ," my wife anwsered. "I ***need not*** remind you of that terrible tie you bought yesterday. "

"你**本来就不必**说那种话," 我的妻子回答道."我**不必**提醒你昨天买的那条吓人的领带了。"

"I find it beautiful," I said. " A man ***can never*** have ***too*** many ties . "

"And a woman ***can't*** have ***too*** many hats," she answered.

Ten minutes later we walked out of the shop together. My wife ***was wearing*** a hat that looked like a lighthouse!

"我觉得它很漂亮," 我说。"一个男人领带**再多也不嫌多**。"

"而一个女人帽子**再多也不算过分**。"她答道。

十分钟之后，我们一起走出了商店。我的妻子**居然带着**那顶看来象一座灯塔的帽子！

【讲解】

1. 情态动词 need not＝needn't（后面不用 to）

   实义动词 do not ***need*** to...

2. needn't have ＝本来就不必（真是多此一举）

   needn't be＋形容词＝不必这样…（如无礼，急躁等）

3. 特别在反意疑问句中，中学生最容易搞错 need 这个词的词性，以致情态和实义混淆。如：

   You ***need*** (实义) a rest, ***needn't you***? (情态)（误）

   You need a rest, don't you?（正）

   You ***needn't be*** so impolite(＝rude) to her, ***don't*** you?（误）

   You ***needn't be*** so impolite to her, ***need*** you?（正）

4. needn't have 这种说法，在我国中学英语教学中很少提及，中学生知道这一表达法的不多，也不会使用。如：

   1) You ***needn't have*** told them that.

   你告诉他们那件事真是多此一举。（本来就不必）

   2) You ***needn't have*** gone there yesterday.

   昨天你本来就不必去那里。

   3) They ***needn't have been*** punished.

   他们本来就不必受到处罚。（这里是被动态）

   以上 needn't have＝didn't have to，两式可互相换用。

5. They did not need to (实义) arrive so early.

   ＝They needn't arrive so early.

   ≠They neededn't arrive so early.

   needn't 用在过去式也还是 needn't，不能说 needed not.

6. 对照下面的表达法，你要特别留意

A {You ***needn't*** wait for me.
=You don't have to (haven't got to) wait for me.

B {You ***needn't have*** waited for me.
=You didn't have to wait for me.

C {***Need*** they ***have*** done it yesterday?
=Did they have to do it yesterday?

D {***Need*** he do it all at once?
=Does he need to do it all at once?

E {Why ***need*** you go today?
Why do you need to go today?

F {So I ***needn't pretend***(假装)，need I?
So I don't need to pretend, do I?

G {You ***mustn't*** eat too much.（你不可吃得太多）
mustn't 的意思是"千万不可""绝对不要"
≠You ***cannot*** eat ***too*** much.
（不解释：你不能吃得太多）
cannot…too=再多也不算多，也不算过分。
=can never+too

因此，本课有 A man ***can never*** have ***too*** many ties. 这句话，不能解释为"一个男人永远不能有太多的领带"。而应该理解为"一个男人领带再多也不算过分（也不算多）"。言下之意"越多越好。"

7. 上面谈到 don't have to=haven't got to（不必）

为什么有一个 got 放在里面呢？

got 常与 have 连用，但有三个条件。

①have 作为"有"解，可以用 got 。如：

Have you got a pencil?

你有铅笔吗？

②have 作为"患病的患"解，可以用 got。如：

He has got a fever (a headache).

他得了热病了(发烧了)。他头痛了。

③在 have to 里面可以加 got.

Have you got to do that?

你有必要做那件事吗?

I haven't got to do that.

我不必做那件事。

但不用在 did you have to ,will have to, didn't have to, don't have to, do you have to 等里面。

此外,在一些以 have 组成的习惯语中,也不可用 got。

如 have a bath(洗澡),have a look (看一下)都不行。

例 I will have got a bath. (误)

Let's have got a look. (误)

8. 总结:"不必"的多种表达法:

You needn't go there.

You don't need to go there.

You don't have to go there.

You haven't got to go there.

It is not necessary for you to go there.

{You needn't have gone there.
You didn't have to go there.} 本不必

【语言材料】

1. ...as... 一面…一面…。as 的左面和右面的动词时态相等。

例: He became nervous ***as*** he saw her face.

他一面看她的脸色一面变得很紧张。

She glanced at me curiously ***as*** I opened the door.

我一面把门打开时,她一面好奇地瞅着我。

2. in front of 在…前面

3. find+宾语+形容词 I find it beautiful. beautiful 是 it 的宾语补语。=I find that it is beautiful.

4. was wearing　这不是一般的过去进行式。was＋ing 往往带有一种惊奇的色彩。中国话讲"居然"，就是这个意思。

例： When I asked his name, he ***was crying.***

当我问到他的姓名时，他**居然**大哭起来。

【习题】

选择填空

(　) 1. You need a new dress, ________ you?

a. don't　　b. needn't

c. need　　d. need not

(　) 2. You needn't have told me that. You ________ do that.

a. don't need to　　b. haven't got to

c. don't have to　　d. didn't have to

(　) 3. You needn't do your homework. You ________ your homework.

a. does not need to do　　b. haven't got to do

c. have got to do　　d. mustn't do

(　) 4. You don't have to come with us if you don't want to. ________ come with us if you don't want to.

a. You are not necessary to

b. You don't be necessary to

c. You needn't to

d. It is not necessary for you to

(　) 5. You ________ finish your soup(汤) if you don't like it.

a. mustn't　　b. needn't

c. don't need　　d. have not to

(　) 6. You ________ read in bed. It's bad for your eyes.

a. don't need　　b. needn't to

c. mustn't　　d. needn't have to

(　) 7. "Must I take a taxi?"

"No, a bus is coming. You ________ take a taxi."

a. mustn't　　b. don't need

c. needn't got to　　　　　d. needn't

( ) 8. "Can I smoke?"

"No, it says 'No Smoking'. You ________ smoke."

a. needn't　　　　　b. mustn't

c. do not need　　　　　d. do not need to

( ) 9. "Must I finish this soup?"

"________, if you don't like it."

a. No　　　　　b. Mustn't

c. Needn't　　　　　d. Not

( ) 10. I won't buy that. I ________ it.

a. needn't　　　　　b. don't want buy

c. needn't have　　　　　d. don't need

29 *A Slip of the Tongue*[*]

失　言

there must have been	should have

本课重点　情态动词两种表达法表示："谅必有"，"本该"（Ⅲ）

People will do anything to see a free show—even if it is a bad one. When the news got round that a variety show would be presented at our local cinema by the P. and U. Bird Seed Company, we all rushed to see it.

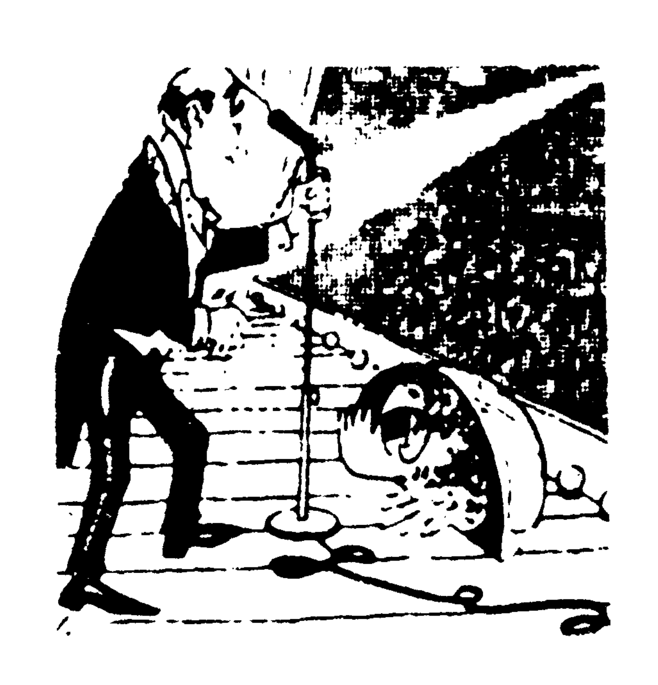
为了看一场不花钱的杂耍表演人们是万难不辞的——即使是蹩脚的

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第 2 册第 89 课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第 167 页。

表演也要看。当消息传开，说是有一场杂耍表演将在当地电影院演出，由 P. U 鸟食公司主办时，我们都赶紧跑去观看。

We had to queue for hours to get in and ***there must have been*** several hundred people present just before the show began. Unfortunately, the show was one of the dullest we have ever seen.



我们必须排上好几个钟头的队才得以入场，而且在杂耍演出前，**谅必有**数百人到场了。不幸的是，这场演出是我们所看过的最乏味的演出之一。

Those who failed to get in ***need not have*** felt disappointed as many of the ***artistes*** who ***should have*** appeared did not come. The only funny things we heard that evening came from the advertiser at the beginning of the programme. He was obviously very nervous and for some minutes stood awkwardly before the microphone.

那些没能入场的人**本来就不必**感到失望，因为许多**本该**来演出的艺人们都没有来。那天晚上我们唯一听到的可笑的事情就出自那位节目一开始时的广告宣传员之口。显然他神经非常紧张而且有好几分钟傻呼呼地站在扩音器前。

As soon as he opened his mouth , everyone burst out laughing. We all know what the poor man ***should have*** said, but what he actually said was: "This is the Poo and Ee Seed Bird Company. Good ladies, evening and gentlemen!"

他一开口，大家突然哄堂大笑。我们都清楚这个可怜的人**本该**说些什么，但是他实际上说的却是："我们是波 · 依食鸟公司。好女士们，晚上先生们！"（应该说，女士们先生们，晚安，我们是 P · U 鸟食

公司。)

【讲解】

1. 本课继续学习情态动词所组成的词组。
   must have(谅必)+there be (有)=there must have been(谅必有)。这是对过去发生的事所作的推论。
2. should have(本该)=ought to have. 本不该=shouldn't have (oughtn't to have).
   情态动词只有 ought 必须有 to.
   例 You ***oughtn't to have*** spoken to her in that way.
   你本来就不应该以那种方式同她讲话。
   =You ***shouldn't have*** spoken to her in that way.
   例 I ***should have*** helped her, but I never could.
   我本该帮助她的,但是我从未能够助她一臂之力。
   =I ***ought to have*** helped her, but I never could.
   例 For the last two weeks, ***there must have been*** thousands of letters coming from all parts of the world.
   两周来,谅必有数千封信来自世界各地了。
3. Those who failed to get in ***need not have*** felt disappointed.
   那些不能入场的人就是感到失望也是大可不必的。
   =Those who failed to get in ***didn't have to*** feel disappointed.
   So it was fortunate that we ***didn't have to*** get in.
   =So it was fortunate that we ***needn't have*** got in.
   因此幸运的是,我们本来就不必进去。

【语言材料】

1. will do anything to 说什么都要…,万难不辞…
2. even if 即使(=even though)
3. get round 常指(消息)的传开。(不用被动态,但常用进行式)

4. a variety show　杂耍戏
5. be presented by　由…推出，演出
6. rush to　匆忙赶去
7. get in　入场
8. be present　到场，在座(present 是形容词)
9. fail to　不能，…不了，没能
10. feel disappointed　感到失望(系表结构)
11. at the beginning of　在…开始之时
12. be nervous　感到紧张
13. burst out laughing　突然放声大笑(＝burst into laughter)
14. a slip of the tongue　＝a slip of the lip 失言，口误
15. artiste　艺人，表演艺术家　读[aː'tiːst]　不同于 artist(画家)　读['aːtist]

【习题】

选择填空：

(　) 1. I'm sorry I couldn't get there on time. I ________ to the bank.
a. should go　b. have to go
c. should have gone　d. oughtn't go

(　) 2. I ________ to the dentist(牙医) yesterday but I forgot all about it.
a. should be going　b. must be going
c. should have gone　d. didn't go

(　) 3. You ________ open the door of the compartment(车厢) until the train has stopped.
a. need not　b. mustn't
c. had to　d. don't have to

(　) 4. He ________ called the police, but he didn't.
a. should have　b. ought have
c. must have　d. might have

( ) 5. "Did he have to work this morning?"

"Yes, he did. He ________ work this morning."

a. has to　　b. had to

c. must　　d. need

( ) 6. How long ________ queue?

a. did they have to　　b. they had to

c. had they to　　d. they did have to

( ) 7. There must have been several hundred people present, ________.

a. it was necessary to be　　b. I think there were

c. there must be　　d. there had to be

( ) 8. Many of the artistes who ________ did not come.

a. ought to appear　　b. should appear

c. had to appear　　d. ought to have appeared

( ) 9. A variety show is usually very ________.

a. light　　b. unusual

c. different　　d. serious

( ) 10. We had to queue. We had to wait ________.

a. our trun　　b. the queue

c. our row　　d. for the line

( ) 11. The show was dull. It was ________.

a. uninterested　　b. uninteresting

c. interesting　　d. disinterested

( ) 12. He was nervous. He felt ________.

a. angry　　b. bad-tempered

c. annoyed　　d. anxious

( ) 13. Everyone burst out laughing. There was a lot of ________.

a. laughter　　b. laughings

c. laugh　　d. laughters

( ) 14. The moment he opened his mouth, they all burst ________ laughter.

a. into　　b. out

c. to　　d. with

(　)15. The show was one of the dullest we have ever seen. We have never seen a ________.

a. dullest show　　b. more duller show

c. more dull one　　d. duller show

30 *Volcanoes**

火　山

> managed to, didn't manage to
> was able to, wasn't able to

本课重点：be able to, manage to **用在过去式**时的重要概念及其特点

Haroun Tazieff, the Polish scientist, has spent his life-time studying active volacnoes and deep caves in all parts of the world. In 1948, he went to lake Kivu in the Congo to observe a new volcano which he later named Kituro.

哈罗恩·塔齐亚夫，这位波兰科学家，曾花了毕生精力研究世界各地的活火山及深洞。在 1948 年，他到刚果的基伏湖去观察过一个新的火山，后来他把该火山叫做基脱罗。

Tazieff ***was able to*** set up his camp very close to the volacno while it was erupting violently. Though he ***managed to*** take a number of brilliant photographs, he ***could*** not stay near the

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第 2 册第 67 课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第 126 页。

volacno for very long.
塔齐亚夫**想尽办法终于能**在火山猛烈喷发的时候把自己的帐篷搭在十分靠近那火山的地方。虽然他**好不容易**拍下了许多极好的照片，但他不**能**在火山附近久久停留。

He noticed that a river of liquid rock was coming towards him. It threatened to surround him completely, but Tazieff ***managed to*** escape just in time. He waited until the volcano became quiet and he ***was able to*** return two days later.
他注意到一股岩浆朝他在的方向流来。大有把他团团围住之势，但塔齐业夫**排除一切困难终于**及时逃脱。他一直等到两天后火山平静下来，终于又回到火山附近。
This time, he ***managed to*** climb into the mouth of Kituro so that he could take photographs and measure temperatures. Tazieff has often risked his life in this way. He ***has been able to*** tell us more about active volcanoes than any man alive.
这次，他**好不容易**爬进了基脱罗的火山口，目的为了拍些照片，测量一些温度。塔齐亚夫常常就是这样敢冒生命的危险。他**始终**比任何在世的人都**有可能**更多地告诉我们有关活火山的情况。

【讲解】

1. was able to＝managed to　终于有可能，排除一切困难终于，好不容易总算…，其否定式解释：说什么也不能… 不解释“设法”。因为 manage to, be able to 用在过去式，说明事情都结束了，办成了。这一概念很重要。

   例： He didn't agree with me at first but I ***was able to*** (***managed to***) persuade him.

当初他并不同意我的看法，但是我**好不容易总算**把他说服过来了。（说明事情已经完成，办成了。）

例：He ***was able to*** go to London yesterday.

他**好不容易总算**在昨天去伦敦了。

例：I wasn't able to understand him.

我**说什么也**听**不**懂他的意思。

=I ***didn't manage to*** understand him.

He ***didn't manage to*** leave Germany before the war began.

在大战开始前，他**说什么也不能**从德国走掉。

=He ***was not able to*** leave Germany before the war began.

2. 以上讲的是 was able to，managed to，wasn't able to 和 didn't manage to 的概念。其特点是什么呢？was able to 不等于 could 的使用要求，could 只是"能"，而不是"有可能"，"终于有可能"。

例：She ***could*** run and was a good tennis player.

她**能**奔跑所以她是一个优秀的网球运动员。

像这里的 could，绝对不能把 was able to 换用。反之，再看刚才那一句：He didn't agree with me at first but I ***was able to*** persuade him.

这里的 was able to 也绝对不能把 could 换用，因为意思差别太大了。

3. 总结：不要一看到 was able to 就认为和 could 的意思是一样的。这是完全不同的两种概念。例如：

我不能把这段文字翻译成英语。（泛指不能）

我说什么也不能把这段文字翻译成英语。（这一翻译的动作已发生过，只是证明无法成功）

英语是：I ***could not*** translate this passage into English.

I ***didn't manage to***（***wasn't able to***）translate this passage into English.

例 He managed to escape to South America.

他好不容易逃亡到南美。(人已到南美,是经过种种困难曲折方才成功的)

He *could* escape to South America.

他能逃到南美。(只能说明此人身体不错。身强力壮,能走能跑,能有逃到南美的体质条件)

4. 一般时态的 be able to, will be able to 都解释有可能,将有可能。

一般时态的 manage to, 可以解释"设法",你千万不要相信一些劣质出版物把 manage to 和 managed to 都解释"设法"。

例 Do you suppose you can ***manage to*** get me a passport?

你认为你能**设法**给我弄一张护照吗?(未弄成)

I don't see how he could ***manage to*** do that.

我看不出他怎样**设法**去做那件事。(未做成)

例 Mr Johnson, you see, ***managed to*** get me a passport.

你看,约翰逊先生**终于**给我弄来了一张护照。(已成功)

He ***managed to*** do that two days ago.

两天前,他好不容易把那件事**做成了**。

有些蹩脚的"翻译家",在其出版物上连 was able to 都翻不出来,这种译文究竟有什么学术价值?试看:

①Tazieff ***was able to*** set up his camp very close to the volcano while it was erupting violently.

泰哲夫**能**在火山猛烈喷发的时候,把自己的账篷搭在十分靠近那火山的地方。

②...he ***could*** not stay near the volcano for very long.

他不**能**在火山附近久停。

③...so that he ***could*** take photographs…

以便**能**拍到照片。

你看 was able to 和 could 都是"能"。他不知道这篇课文所以苦心写作,目的就是要你区别 could 和 was able to (managed to)的不同概念的。如果统统译成"能",还要你的译文干什么用?

【语言材料】

1. spend＋宾语＋ing　花去多少时间…干什么事。spent his life-time studying...
2. all parts of the world　世界各地＝different places of the world
3. set up　搭起
4. close to　靠近(close 是形容词)
5. take photographs　拍照，拍什么对象的照，后跟 of
6. for(very)long　久久地
7. threaten to　大有…之势
8. just in time　及时，刚好
9. climb into　爬进
10. measure temperatures　量温度，也可用 take
11. in this way　这种样子
12. has been able to　始终有可能

【习题】

选择填空

(　) 1. They ________ swim to the other side of the river.

a. didn't managed to　　b. weren't able to

c. hardly could　　d. failed in

(　) 2. They ________ find the boy who had run away.

a. weren't able to　　b. did managed to

c. in the last day　　d. couldn't managed to

(　) 3. He will come if he ________.

a. is able　　b. was able

c. is able to　　d. was able to

(　) 4. At first, they ________ able to take a great many photographs ________ the mountains, but they soon ran into trouble.

a. was…from　　　　b. were…for

c. could be…for　　　　d. were…of

( ) 5. It's a pity you can't come to the concert(音乐会).

However, you ________ hear it on the radio.

a. are able to　　　　b. can be able to

c. will be able to　　　　d. will able to

( ) 6. I ________ see you tomorrow.

a. shall be able to　　　　b. shall manage

c. shall be possible to　　　　d. shalln't be able to

( ) 7. "Can you come to the theatre with us ***tomorrow***?"

"No, I'm afraid I ________."

a. am not able to　　　　b. shall be able to

c. couldn't manage to　　　　d. won't be able to

( ) 8. "***Could*** she get any theatre tickets?"

"No, I'm afraid she ________."

a. won't be able to　　　　b. won't be managed to

c. wasn't be able to　　　　d. wasn't able to

( ) 9. "***Can*** you speak English yet?"

"No, I'm afraid I ________."

a. am not able to　　　　b. won't be able to

c. shan't be able to　　　　d. am able to

( )10. He noticed a river of liquid rock ________ towards him.

a. was flowing　　　　b. was coming

c. was approaching　　　　d. coming

( )11. He managed to take a number of photographs. This means he ________ them.

a. should have taken　　　　b. ought to have taken

c. could take　　　　d. succeeded in taking

( )12. He escaped just in time. He ________ escaped.

a. just only　　　　b. only just

c. only　　　　d. soon

( )13. He wanted to measure temperatures. He wanted to ________

them.

a. do　　b. make

c. count　　d. take

(　)14. He has told us more than any ________ person.

a. alive　　b. lively

c. live　　d. living

(　)15. Tazieff ________ what he wanted, anyhow.

a. managed to get　　b. succeed in getting

c. didn't able to get　　d. wasn't managed to get

(　)16. A: "She didn't swim across the river."

B: "No, but she could if she wanted to."

A: "I don't believe it."

B: "Well, she ________ swim across the river last week."

a. did managed to　　b. was able to

c. succeeded to　　d. finally

(　)17. "I wasn't able to translate this passage into English. What about John?"

"Oh, he ________ translate this passage into English last night."

a. managed to　　b. finally able to

c. did finally able to　　d. was managed to

(　)18. "I don't think you could stop smoking."

"Well, I ________ stop smoking last month."

a. was finally manage to　　b. was able to

c. certainly　　d. at last

习题做到这儿，你一定非常清楚 could 和 was able to，managed to 大有不同之处。尤其是 16，17，18 三题把问题讲得十分明确，使你头脑里有一种新的概念。

31 *The Best and the Worst**

最佳和最劣

more, ...er,	the most / the...st	+of all, (in)

本课重点 形容词 / 副　词 的比较等级(Ⅰ)

Joe Sanders has ***the most*** beautiful garden in our town. Nearly everybody enters for "***The Nicest*** Garden Competition" each year, but Joe wins every time.

在我们城里,乔·桑德斯的花园是最美丽的。几乎每个人每年都报名参加"最佳花园赛",但是每次都是乔独占鳌头。

Bill Frith's garden is ***larger than*** Joe's. Bill works ***harder than*** Joe and grows ***more*** flowers and vegetables, but Joe's garden is ***more*** interesting. He has made neat paths and has built a wooden bridge over a pool. I like gardens too, but I do

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第8课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第13页。

not like hard work.

皮尔·弗里思的花园比乔的要大。皮尔比乔干起活来还更出劲些，种的花草蔬果也多些，但是乔的花园更令人感到有趣些。他铺上整齐的小道，还在池塘上架起了一座木桥。我也喜欢花园，可是我不喜欢辛苦的劳动。

Every year I enter for the garden competition too, and I always win a little prize for ***the worst*** garden in the town!

每年我也都报名参加花园竞赛，而总是得到微不足道的全城最差的花园奖。

【讲解】

1. 本课有七次显示形容词和副词的比较等级，分别用 more，the...st，和...er 穿插在课文中。

   a）本课形容词（和副词）的比较级及最高级形式：

   1）***the most*** interesting

   2）***the Nicest*** Garden Competition

   3）***larger*** than

   4）***more*** interesting

   5）***the worst***

   6）works ***harder*** than

   7）grows ***more*** flowers

   b）larger 一词已是比较级的写法了，这同副词 harder 一样，不能在前面再加 more。

2. 最高级形容词常和 in，of 连用，试看下列例句：

   1）He is ***the best*** student ***in*** our class.

   2）This radio is ***the most*** expensive（昂贵）***of*** all the ones in the shop.

   3）Which is ***the longest*** river ***in*** the world?

   4）This is ***the finest*** picture ***of*** them all.

3. more interesting 的相对，就是 less interesting. 什么叫 less?

less＝not so（不怎么…），not so 后面不用 than，用 as.

4. 也许你要问：什么词用 the most，什么词用…st，什么词用…er，什么词整个儿都变了（如 worse）。这的确问得好，一般知道多音节形容词用 the most，其它就讲不出来了。实际上，这要具体词具体对待，要一个一个记，没有一揽子的统一形式。如 white（白），更白是否能说 whiter？词典上有 whiter 这个词，但实际上都不用。却说 This is less white，或 you can make it white. 这就是牵涉到语言的习惯方面的问题了。

【语言材料】

1. enter for　报名参加
2. every time　每次
3. hard work　艰苦的劳动
4. work harder　干活更卖力，更辛苦
5. a little prize　微不足道的奖品

【习题】

选择填空

（　）1. "Jane is ________ than Mary". "I don't agree with you. I think she's ________."

a. shorter…longer　　b. longer…lower

c. taller…shorter　　d. shortter…taller

（　）2. "Betty's dress is ________ than Jane's."

"I don't think so. I think it is ________."

a. more expensive…not expensive

b. not so expensive…more expensive

c. not so better…better

d. less expensive…more expensive.

（　）3. "This book is ________ than that one.

a. less so exciting b. more exciting

c. more excited d. less excited

( ) 4. A's garden is larger than B's. It is ________.

a. larger garden b. a large garden

c. large garden d. largest garden

( ) 5. Bill works harder than Joe, so he is a ________ worker.

a. best b. hard

c. more harder d. less harder

( ) 6. Joe's garden is the best in the town. It's the best ________ them all.

a. in b. for

c. from d. of

( ) 7. Joe wins every time. He always ________ Bill Frith.

a. wins b. gains

c. passes d. beats

( ) 8. He grows more flowers. More flowers ________ in his garden.

a. are grow b. are grew

c. grow d. grow up

( ) 9. He doesn't like hard work. It is ________ to look after a garden.

a. a hard work b. a hard job

c. hard job d. hardly a job

( ) 10. Bill Frith's garden is larger than Jos's .

=Bill Frith's garden is not so ________ Joe's.

a. large than b. big than

c. larger than d. large as

32 *Shopping Made Easy*[*]

购物变得很方便

people are ***not* so** honest ***as*** they once were.

本课重点： not so (as)...as 的比较模式（Ⅱ）

People are ***not* so** honest ***as*** they once were. The temptation to steal is ***greater than*** ever before — especially in large shops.

人们不如过去那样诚实了。盗窃的诱惑比以往任何时候都更强烈，——尤其在大商店里。

A detective recently watched a well-dressed woman who always went into a large store on Monday mornings. One Monday , there were ***fewer*** people in the shop ***than*** usual when the woman came in, so it ***was easier*** for the detective to watch her.

不久前，一个侦探监视着一位衣着讲究的妇女，她总是在星期一上午

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第 2 册第 32 课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第 60 页。

走进一家大商店去。一个星期一，当这个妇女来到时，商店里的人比平时要少些，所以侦探比较容易监视她。

The woman first bought a few small articles. After a little time, she chose one of ***the most*** expensive dresses in the shop and handed it to an assistant who wrapped it up for her ***as*** quickly ***as*** possible. Then the woman simply took the parcel and walked out of the shop without paying. When she was arrested, the detective found out that the shop-assistant was her daughter. The girl "gave"her mother a free dress once a week!

这个妇女首先买了一些小商品。过了一小会之后，她挑选了商店里最昂贵的衣裙中的一件并把它交给一位营业员，而这位营业员则尽快地为她把衣裙包起来。然后，这个妇女就干脆拎着包，钱也不付就走出商店。当她被抓住时，这个侦探才了解到那位营业员就是她的女儿。这姑娘一星期一次"给"她的妈妈一件免费女服。

【讲解】

1. 本课讲的是"否定的同等比较"(negative comparison of equality)。模式是:not as(so)...as. 注意下面三式的比较:

   a) Tom is ***not so*** tall ***as*** his brother.

   b) Tom is ***not as*** tall ***as*** his brother.

   c) Tom is ***less*** tall ***than*** his brother.

   less＝not so. 但, not so 跟 ***as*** , less 跟 ***than***.

2. 在同等比较中(comparison of equality) 不用 so...as, 只用 as ...as.

   例 Does John work ***as*** hard(副词) ***as*** Henry?
   约翰象亨利一样努力工作吗?
   He is ***as*** tall (形容词) ***as*** I (am).
   他和我一样高。

3. less (更少), fewer(更少) 分别形容不可数及可数名词。

less = not as much…as
fewer = not as many…as

a few(一些), a little (一些) 分别形容可数及不可数名词

a few = some(形容可数名词)
a little = some(形容不可数名词)

(very)few(少,没有几个) = not many(形容可数名词)

(very)little(少,没有多少) = not much(形容不可数名词)

根据以上所述你再看下面的例句,你就能看懂了,也知道应该怎么说。

a) He has ***not as many*** books ***as*** I have.
他没有我那么多的书。
= He has ***fewer*** books ***than*** I have.

b) There is ***not much*** whisky (威士忌酒,不可数名词) in this bottle.
瓶子里没有多少威士忌酒。
= There is (***very***) ***little*** whisky in this bottle.

c) There is not ***much*** (***a lot***) I can do to help you.
我能帮助你的地方不多。
= There is ***little*** I can do to help you.

d) He has ***not*** (got) ***as much*** work to do ***as*** I have.
他没有我那么多的事要干。
= He has (got) ***less*** work (work 是不可数名词) to do ***than*** I have.

e) There were***n't many*** people in the shop.
商店里没有很多人。
= There were ***very few*** people in the shop.

f) You can pick ***some*** apples if you want to.
如果你要的话你可以摘几个苹果。
= You can pick ***a few*** apples if you want to.

【语言材料】

1. once were　过去那种情况＝used to be

   例: She is not so honest as she ***once was.***

   ＝She is not so honest as she ***used to be.***

   她不象以前那样诚实了。

2. than usual　比平时,比通常的情况
3. it was ＋形容词 for *sb.* to 句型

   例 ***It*** is ***important for*** you ***to*** study English well.

   对你来说把英语学好是很重要的。

4. small article　小物品
5. hand *sth* to *sb*　把(物)交给某某人
6. wrap *sth* up　把(物)包起来
7. as quickly as possible　尽可能快地
8. simply　干脆
9. walk out of　从…走出
10. be arrested　被抓起来,被逮捕
11. find out　了解
12. shopping made easy　＝shopping is made easy (easy 为形容词,作主语 shopping 的补语)

【习题】

选择填空

(　) 1. "Have you any money in the bank?"

"Yes, I have ________. "

"Have you as much as you had last month? "

"No, I have ________ than I had last month. "

a. a little…not so many　　b. some…fewer

c. some…a few　　d. a little…less

(　) 2. "Have you as ________ magazines as you had last week?"

"No, I have ________ I had last week."

a. many…less than
b. much…not as much as
c. a few…fewer than
d. many…fewer than

( ) 3. "Is there as ________ cake as there was yesterday?"

"No, there is ________ than there was yesterday."

a. many…fewer
b. much…fewer
c. many…less
d. much…less

( ) 4. People are not so honest as they once were. They are ________ honest.

a. fewer
b. less
c. so
d. a little

( ) 5. There were fewer people in the shop than usual. There were ________.

a. not as many as usual
b. not as fewer than usual
c. as many as usual
d. less people as usual

( ) 6. The dress was free. It ________.

a. was priceless
b. was worthless
c. cost nothing
d. was grateful

( ) 7. Which dress did she ________?

a. choise
b. choice
c. chose
d. choose

( ) 8. It was one of the most expensive dresses ________ the shop.

a. of
b. to
c. in
d. from

( ) 9. The assistant wrapped it up. She ________ it.

a. packed
b. made a parcel of
c. made a parcel for
d. coverred

( )10. It is ________ cold as it was yesterday.

a. less
b. more
c. as not
d. not as

( )11. We saw many ________ on both sides of the river.

a. smaller houses

b. houses smaller

c. houses more smaller than usual

d. houses smaller than usual

(　)12. My home town is the second ________ city in the province(本省).

a. large　　b. larger

c. the largest　　d. largest

(　)13. Mr Thomson works hardest ________ all.

a. in　　b. for

c. from　　d. of

(　)14. Eighteen is ________ eighty.

a. more fewer than　　b. little fewer than

c. a lot fewer than　　d. much less than

(　)15. His younger brother is ________ stronger than he.

a. more　　b. a lot of

c. little　　d. much

33　*Faster than Sound!* *

超　音　速!

Many of the cars broke down on the course.

本课重点　怎样表达"许多,不同,相同"?(Ⅲ)

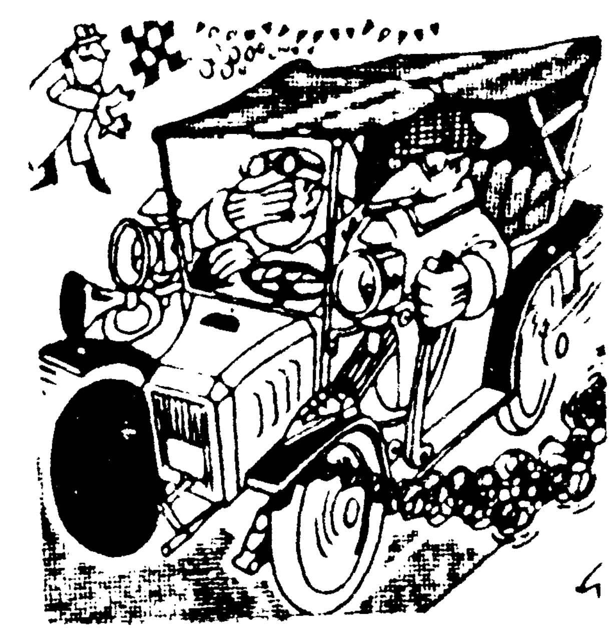
Once a year a race is held for old cars. ***A lot of*** cars entered

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第56课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第106页。

for this race last year and there was ***a great deal of*** excitement just before it began. One of ***the most*** handsome cars was a Rolls-Royce Silver Ghost.
一年一次要为那些旧汽车举行速度比赛。去年有不少汽车报名参加这种比赛，就在比赛开始之前人们兴奋极了。其中最漂亮的汽车之一就是罗尔斯-罗伊斯牌银鬼式汽车。

The most unusual car was a Benz which had only three wheels. Built in 1885, it was the oldest car taking part. After ***a great many*** loud explosions, the race began. ***Many of*** the cars broke down on the course and ***some*** drivers spent ***more*** time under their cars ***than*** in them! ***A few*** cars, however, completed the race.
最不同凡响的汽车就是一辆奔驰牌汽车，它只有三个轮子。造于1885年，此车乃是参赛的最老的汽车了。在一阵又一阵的巨响之后，比赛开始了。其中许多汽车就在路上抛了锚，而有些驾驶员在车子下面呆的时间比在车子里面呆的时间还要长！不过，也有几辆汽车跑完了比赛的全程。



The winning car reached a speed of forty miles an hour —— ***much faster*** than any of its rivals. It sped downhill at the end of the race and its driver had ***a lot of*** trouble trying to stop it. The race gave everyone ***a great deal of*** pleasure. It ***was*** very ***different from*** modern car races but ***no less*** exciting.
获胜的那辆车时速达到四十英里——比它的任何一辆意欲抗争的车都快得多。在比赛结束时它高速冲下山去而驾驶员简直无法刹住它。这场速度比赛给每个人以极大的乐趣。它与新式汽车的比赛大不相同，但令人兴奋的程度却不相上下。

【讲解】

1. 本课集中专论“许多”的各种形容词所组成的词组。如：
   a lot of，（跟可数，不可数名词，不用在否定句）
   a great deal of，（跟不可数名词）
   a great many of，（跟可数名词）
   a great number of，（跟可数名词）
   many of...s，（多用在句首，用在肯定句中）
   be different from，（不用 be different with）
   no less.（同样，不相上下，后加形容词，可省略 than）

   例： Old car races are ***no less*** exciting (***than*** mordern car races.)
   旧汽车比赛比之新式汽车比赛在令人兴奋的程度上来说是毫不逊色的。（是同样令人兴奋）

2. many of＋复数名词（代词复数），如 many of them，many of the cars，也可以用 very many of...，这同 much of＋不可数名词（代词用 it）有所不同。

   例 What about all those jobs I asked you to do this morning?
   今天早上我要求你办的那些事办得怎么样啦？
   I'm afraid I haven't done (very) ***many of them*** yet.
   恐怕我还没有办成很多事。

   例 What about that account（账）I asked you to check?
   我要求你查的那笔账查得怎么样啦？
   I'm afraid I haven't checked (very) ***much of it*** yet.
   恐怕我还没有查很多。（大部分都还没有查）

3. 在形容词比较级…er 之前，不可用 more，但可以用 much，a great (good) deal.

   例
   much faster than...
   a great deal faster than...
   He is ***a great*** (***good***) ***deal*** richer than...

4. more beautiful, more comfortable, 多音节形容词,前面用了 more,还可以再加 a great (good) deal, 以示强调。如:You'd feel ***a great deal more*** comfortable if you did.

如果你要那样做的话你会感到更舒服的。

5. a great deal of 多跟不可数名词。如:money (钱),help (帮助) trouble (困难) pain(痛苦)praise(赞誉)pleasure(愉快)等。

6. a lot of, 不用在否定句。也可用 lots of, 不用 lot of. 至于 a lot, 作为副词=a great deal (也可作名词)

例 She travels a lot (a great deal). 她多次旅行,她常外出旅行。

例
- There ***aren't a lot of*** things I could do. (误)
- There isn't {much (*n.*) / a lot (*n.*) / a great deal (*n.*)} I could do. (正)

也许你要问上句…isn't a great deal 中的 ***a great deal*** 作什么成份?这是作名词使用,表示很多事情(情况)。

例 They had ***a great deal*** to talk about.

他们有很多事情要谈一谈。

I have heard ***a great deal*** about you.

我听到关于你的很多情况。

【语言材料】

1. once a year 每年一次
2. enter for 报名参加
3. there is a great deal of excitement (群众,人们)兴奋极了,非常激动。这是固定结构。
4. break down 抛锚,坏了,不能正常运行
5. on the course 在赛道上
6. reach a speed of 达到…之速度
7. any of its rivals 竞赛对手中的任何一个=any other rival

in the race.

8. have a lot of trouble+ing　句型　难于，简直无法…

例：
They ***had a lot of trouble*** getting tickets for the opera.
他们简直无法弄到看歌剧的票子。
The police ***had a lot of difficulty*** trying to keep order.
警察想把秩序维持好感到十分棘手。

9. be different from　不同于

10. sped downhill　飞快向山下驶去，sped 是动词 speed 的过去式，downhill 作为副词，sped＝speeded.

11. it was the oldest car taking part　这里 taking part 是分词作定语(参赛的)形容 car. ＝it was the oldest car that took part。

12. Built in 1885, it was...　Built in 1885 是分词状语，其逻辑主语就是 it。＝As it was built in 1885, the most unusual car was...

【习题】

Ⅰ. 选择填空

(　) 1. A lot of cars entered for this race. There were ________ cars in it.

a. many of　　b. lot of

c. a great deal of　　d. lots of

(　) 2. It ________ a speed of forty miles an hour. It ________ forty miles an hour.

a. reached...went at　　b. arrived...ran at

c. sped...drove with　　d. ran at...ran with

(　) 3. It was the oldest car that took part. There wasn't ________ one.

a. an elder　　b. an older

c. the oldest d. the eldest

( ) 4. It was no less exciting. It was quite as exciting ________ that.

a. than b. like

c. with d. as

( ) 5. It was different from modern cars. It was not ________ modern cars.

a. same like b. the same as

c. same as d. the same with

( ) 6. The most unusual car was a Benz. It wasn't a ________ car.

a. used b. beautiful

c. special d. common

( ) 7. It went faster than any of its rivals. It went faster than its ________.

a. competitors b. opponents

c. enemies d. partners

( ) 8. I had a lot of trouble ________ the book you wanted.

a. to find b. to look for

c. finding d. looking for

( ) 9. Did you have much difficulty ________ for the car race?

a. to enter b. entering

c. to take part d. taking part

( )10. "Has he made any progress?"

"Oh yes, he's made ________ progress."

a. a great many b. a lots

c. lot of d. a great deal of

( )11. "Didn't you bring a lot of luggage?"

"Yes, ________. I brought ________ luggage."

a. a great many…a lot of

b. a great deal…many of

c. a lot…many

d. a good deal…a lot of

( )12. "Is there any news in the newspaper?"

"Ah, yes, ________. There's ________ news in the newspaper."

a. a great many…lots of

b. a great deal…a great number of

c. very much…many of the

d. a good deal…a lot of

( )13. "Did you get any information?"

"Yes, I got ________ information."

a. lot of　　　　b. a lot

c. many　　　　d. a great deal of

( )14. "What about that speech I asked you to prepare?"

"I'm afraid I haven't prepared ________ yet."

a. many of　　　　b. a great number of it

c. a lot of it　　　　d. much of it

( )15. "What about all those letters I asked you to answer?"

"I'm afraid I haven't answered ________ yet, sir."

a. much of them　　　　b. many of them

c. much of it　　　　d. many of it

Ⅱ. 翻译下列句子:(注意用法,懂了还不算,要会用)

1. She is ***no less*** beautiful than her sister.
2. Sunlight is ***no less*** necessary than fresh air.
3. It must cost ***a great deal*** to live here, don't you think?
4. They talked ***a great deal*** about this problem.
5. She is ***a good deal*** better today.
6. She is ***a lot*** fatter.
7. We see ***a lot of*** him these days.
8. I asked him ***a good many*** questions, but ***a good many of*** them were not answered.
9. She is ***quite as*** beautiful ***as*** her sister.
10. Sunlight is ***quite as*** necessary ***as*** fresh air.

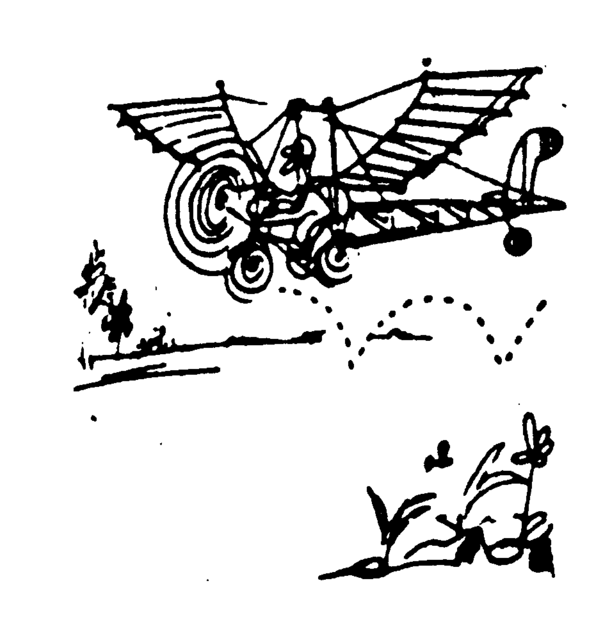
34 *Cycling through the Air*[*]

骑自行车升空飞行

Mr Wimpenny has ***had*** it ***rebuilt***.

本课重点 使役结构(causative form)

The Hatfield Puffin is a modern aeroplane, but its designer, Mr John Wimpenny, is finding it difficult to get it off the ground. The reason for this is that this plane is also a bicycle. Its pilot has to pedal hard to get it into the air.



哈特费尔德·普芬是一架新式飞机,但飞机的设计者,约翰·威姆佩尼感到难于使它从地面上起飞。其原因就是这架飞机又是一辆自行车,它的驾驶员必须使劲踩脚踏才能使它升空。

After Mr Wimpenny ***had*** the plane ***built***, it was tested thoroughly. In 1961, it was the first man-powered aircraft to fly half a mile. While being flown by a champion amateur cyclist in 1963, the plane crashed on an airfield. Since then, Mr

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第 2 册第 66 课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第 64 页。

Wimpenny ***has had it rebuilt***. He ***has had*** the length of the wings ***increased*** so that they now measure 93 feet —— almost as long as those of a Dakota.
在威姆佩尼叫人把飞机造好后，这架飞机被彻底地试验了一下。在1961年它是第一架由人力驾驶的可以飞半英里的飞机。在1963年，当由一个业余自行车赛冠军驾驶这架飞机时，飞机坠毁在一个机场上。从那以后，威姆佩尼已叫人重造了一架。他已经把机翼的长度增加了，因此它的翅膀现在量下来有93英尺长——几乎像达科它型飞机的翅膀那样长。

Many people have shown interest in this new and unusual sport. But though air cyclists may learn how to fly over short distances, and may, eventually, even get across the English Channel, it is doubtful whether they ***will ever*** cycle across the Atlantic.
许多人对这种不同寻常的运动有兴趣。但是尽管空中自行车骑手可以学会如何飞过几段很短的距离，同时，最终甚至还可以飞越英吉利海峡，但是他们**今后能否会**骑车横越大西洋还是令人怀疑的。

【讲解】

1. 使役结构一般在中学高一年级开始学习，但不是很全面。由于这一结构都解释“**叫人**把什么什么东西搞一搞”，“叫人”有时要用这样解释，有时不一定“叫人”，我将在下面第4点讲这一问题。
   这一结构有以下几种模式：(这是基本模式，当然还有更复杂的)

A
- 第一模式： ***have***＋(**物**)＋(**过去分词**)
  I'll have the desk repaired.
  我要(叫人)把书桌修一修。
- 第二模式： ***get***＋(**物**)＋(**过去分词**)
  I'll get the desk repaired.
  我要(叫人)把书桌修一修。

B

第三模式： ***have*＋（人）＋动词原形**

I'll have John (him) repair the desk.

我要叫约翰（他）修这书桌。

第四模式： ***get*（人）＋*to*…**

I'll get John (him) to repair the desk.

我要叫约翰（他）修这书桌。

2. "have＋（物）＋过去分词"是最常见的模式。前面可以加I'll，I'll have to，I've，I'm going to…等。但也不是"物"都用这一模式，有时也用"人"。

如：I'll have to ***have*** my daughter ***trained*** (***educated***).

我还得叫人把我的女儿培训一下（指导教育一下）。

3. 一般都熟悉第一模式，其它三种就不太熟悉，尤其是第四模式。

例 We'll ***have*** this machine ***moved.***

我们要把这机器开动起来。

I suppose it'll be difficult to ***get*** it ***moved.***

我的看法是，把它开动是很难的。

How about George? We'd better ***get*** him ***to*** move it.

乔治怎么样？我们最好叫乔治把它开动起来。

例 I ironed my shirt.

我把我的衬衣烫平了。

Surely you didn't iron it yourself, you had it ironed (got it ironed, got your aunt to iron it).

肯定你自己没有烫，你叫人烫了（喊别人烫了，叫你的姑妈烫了）。

4. 下面一种使役结构要注意：

1) A week ago, I had ***had*** a hundred dollars ***saved.***

一周前，我已经积存了一百美元。（不能说叫人去积存，这是自己积攒下来的）

2) He had his pocket picked.

他遭到小偷偷窃，把他的口袋里的钱物摸走了。（不能说叫小偷来把他的口袋摸一摸）

3)The pilot had his plane hijacked.

飞机驾驶员遭到劫机之难。(不能说叫人来劫一下机)

【语言材料】

1. is finding it difficult to　越来越感到难于…(to 不用,用 ing)
2. get it off the ground　使它离地起飞
3. get it into the air　使它升空
4. while being flown by　=while it was being flown by...
5. so that +*v*.　因此,所以(结果状语)
6. show interest in　表示对…有兴趣
7. fly over　飞越
8. get across　横越
9. it is doubtful whether...　是否…还是有怀疑的
10. will ever　今后会
11. cycle across　骑车横越
12. 注意本课以 get+介词短语的结构(见 2,3)

    例　We couldn't ***get*** the piano ***through the door.***

    我们不能把钢琴从门口搬出去。

    They finally ***got*** their friends ***out of difficulty.***

    他们最后使他们的朋友解决了难题。

    Let's ***get*** the work ***off hand*** today.

    今天让我们别去管这件事吧。(把这件事甩开)

13. ***ever*** 和 ***will*** 相连用　指今后会(won't+ever=今后不会)

    例　I don't think he ***will ever*** write to her.

    我认为他今后不会写信给她了。(我并不认为他**今后会**写信给她)

    He ***won't ever*** see her any more.

    他**今后不会**再见她了。

下面这句翻译显然译者不知道 will ever 的内涵,所以译得不是那种意思:

it is doubtful whether they will ever cycle across the Atlantic.
但他们是否**能**骑过大西洋是令人怀疑的。(不是"能")

【习题】

选择填空

( ) 1. He is finding it difficult ________ it off the ground.

a. get b. getting

c. to getting d. for getting

( ) 2. It is not only a plane ________ a bicycle as well.

a. but also b. also

c. but d. but too

( ) 3. He has had the plane built. This means ________.

a. he built himself

b. he is building it now

c. he has just finished building it

d. someone else built it for him

( ) 4. It was the first man-powered aircraft ________ half a mile.

a. who ever fly b. which ever fly

c. that ever flew d. that ever fly

( ) 5. It ________ flown by a champion cyclist when it crashed.

a. was been b. was being

c. has being d. has been

( ) 6. The wings are 93 feet ________.

a. in length b. in longness

c. in width d. in wide

( ) 7. It is ________ whether they will ever cycle across the Atlantic.

a. without doubt b. doubtless

c. doubt d. uncertain

( ) 8. "We'll have our new house specially ________."

"I'm afraid it will be difficult to ________ it ________."

a. designed…get…designed

b. builded…get…builded

c. putted up...get...erected

d. made...get...putted up

( ) 9. A: "She cut her hair."

B: "Surely she didn't cut it herself. She ________."

a. has it cut

b. has someone cut it

c. had someone else cuts it

d. had it cut

( ) 10. A: "I washed my car."

B: "Surely you didn't wash it yourself. You ________."

a. had got your brother wash it

b. got Mr Henry washed it

c. got somebody else to wash it

d. had them washed it

35 *Am I All Right?**

我好了吗?

He asked if Mr Gilbert's operation ***had been*** successful...

本课重点 间接引语基本模式(Ⅰ)

While John Gilbert was in hospital, he ***asked*** his doctor to tell him ***whether*** his operation had been successful, but the doctor

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第39课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第72页。

refused to do so. The following day, the patient asked for a bedside telephone.
约翰·吉尔伯特在住院期间,他要求他的医生告诉他是否他的手术很成功,但医生拒绝这样做。第二天,这个病人要一个床头电话。

When he was alone, he telephoned the hospital exchange and asked for Doctor Millington. When the doctor answered the phone, Mr Gilbert ***said*** he was inquiring about a certain patient, a Mr John Gilbert. ***He asked if*** Mr Gilbert's operation had been successful and the doctor ***told*** him ***that*** it had been.
当他独自在病房时,他打电话给医院总机要求和密灵顿医生通话。当医生接电话时,吉尔伯特先生说他正要查询某个病人,一个叫约翰·吉尔伯特先生的人。他问是否这个叫约翰·吉尔伯特的人的手术做得很须利,而这位医生则告诉他说
手术很成功。

He then ***asked when*** Mr Gilbert would be allowed to go home and the doctor ***told him that*** he would have to stay in hospital for another two weeks. Then Dr Millington ***asked*** the caller ***if*** he was a relative of the patient. "No," the patient answered, "I am Mr John Gilbert."
然后他问吉尔伯特先生什么时候可以被准许回家,这位医生告诉他说他还得在医院再呆上两个星期。接着密灵顿医生问这个打电话的人他是否是这位病人的亲戚。"不,"这个病人回答道,"我就是约翰·吉尔伯特先生。"

【讲解】

1. 本课主要讲 He asked if (whether)…这是间接引语中的一个基本模式，另外还展示：He said that…, He told me…等模式。下面对照一下直接引语和间接引语的关系：

"I ***am*** inquiring about a certain patient," Mr Gilbert ***said***.

→Mr Gilbert said (that) he ***was*** inquiring about a certain patient.

"***Was*** Mr Gilbert's operation successful?" he ***asked***.

→He ***asked if*** Mr Gilbert's operation ***had been*** successful.

"Yes, it *was*," *the doctor* ***told*** him.

→The doctor ***told*** him that it ***had been*** (successful).

"When ***will*** Mr Gilbert ***be allowed to*** go home?" he ***asked***.

→He ***asked*** when Mr Gilbert ***would be allowed to*** go home.

"He ***will have to*** stay in hospital for another two weeks," the doctor ***told*** him.

→The doctor ***told*** him that he ***would have to*** stay in hospital for another two weeks.

"***Are you*** a relative of the patient?" Dr Millington asked the caller.

→The doctor ***asked*** the caller ***if he was*** a relative of the patient.

"No," the patient answered, "I ***am*** Mr Gilbert."

→The patient ***answered that*** he ***wasn't*** a relative of the patient ***and that*** he himself ***was*** Mr Gilbert.

2. 在间接引语中特别要注意**宾语从句的语序，时态变换**。

如：（语序不对）

A)"When will Jack arrive?"

B)"What did he ask?"

C)He asked when would Jack arrive. (误)

应:He asked when Jack would arrive.

再如:(时态不对)

A)"When did Jack arrive?"

B)"What did he ask?"

C)He asked when Jack arrived. (误)

应:He asked when Jack had arrived.

"Why has Mary never been to Australia before?" he asked.

⟶ He asked why had Mary never been to Australia before. (误)

⟶ He asked why Mary had never been to Australia before. (正)

"Are you surprised?" he asked.

⟶ He asked if you are surprised. (误)

⟶ He asked if you were surprised. (正)

3. He said to me that he had never been abroad before. (误)

He told me that he had never been abroad before. (正)

【语言材料】

1. be in hospital 住院
2. refuse to 拒绝
3. the following day 次日
4. ask for 要某件东西,要某人听电话
5. be alone 单独一人
6. answer the phone 接电话
7. inquire about 查询
8. be allowed to 获准…
9. will have to 还得

10. for another　再过…

11. a relative of the patient　病人的亲戚(泛指)

a relative of the patient's　病人的一个亲戚(之一)

附常用"直引"变"间引"变化表：

now(现在)——→then(那时)

this(这个)——→that(那个)

these(这些)——→those(那些)

here(这里)——→there(那里)

today(今日)——→that day(那日)

★tomorrow(明日)——→{the next day(次日) / the following day(翌日)}

★yesterday(昨日)——→{the day before(前日) / the previous day(前一天)}

★last night(昨夜)——→{the night before(前夜) / the previous night(前一天夜里)}

ago(自…以前)——→before(在…以前)

注：★所列，并非死板，要看具体情况是追述，还是当时转述。

【习题】

选择填空

( ) 1. The doctor refused to ________ about his operation.

a. speak to him　　b. say him

c. speak him　　d. tell to him

( ) 2. ________? A bedside telephone.

a. For what did he ask　　b. What did he ask

c. For what did he ask for　　d. What did he ask for

( ) 3. He will have to stay in hospital. That's what he ________.

a. must be doing　　b. must have done

c. must do　　d. has done

( ) 4. The following day he asked for a telephone. He did this ________.

a. next day　　b. the next day

c. the other day　　d. tomorrow

(　) 5. He was alone. He was ________.

a. lonely　　b. with himself

c. on his own　　d. beside himself

(　) 6. He inquired about a patiet. He wanted ________.

a. a few news　　b. informations for himself

c. information　　d. some informations about himself

(　) 7. A: "Can you come tomorrow?"

B: "What did he say?"

C: "He asked if you could come ________."

a. following day　　b. the following day

c. the next day　　d. tomorrow

(　) 8. "He was in Vienna a month ago," he said.

He said that he ________ in Vienna a month ________.

a. was…before　　b. had…before

c. had been…ago　　d. had been…before

(　) 9. He said, "It rained here yesterday."

——→He said that it had rained ***here*** ________.

a. the day before　　b. the previous day

c. last day　　d. yesterday

(　) 10. He said, "It rained here yesterday."

——→He said that it had rained ***there*** ________.

a. the previous day　　b. the day ago

c. last day　　d. yesterday

(　)11. (pointing to a book on the shelf 用手指着书架上的一本书)

He said, "I bought this a few days ago, but I'm going to sell it tomorrow."

——→He said that he ________ a few days ________, but that he was going to sell it ________.

a. had bought this…before…next day

b. had had this…before…the following day

c. had bought that…before…tomorrow

d. had bought that…before…the next day

( )12. He said, "My father returned last night."

⟶He said that his father ________.

a. returned the night ago

b. had returned the night before

c. had returned at previous night

d. did return last night

( )13. He said, "It is 8 o'clock now."

⟶He said that it was 8 o'clock ________.

a. than

b. then

c. that day

d. the previous day

( ) 14. He said, "Who are you?"

⟶He asked me ________.

a. whom I was

b. who was me

c. who was I

d. who I was

( )15. He said, "Which is the book you want?"

⟶He asked me which ________.

a. I wanted the book

b. book was I wanted

c. was the book I wanted

d. book did I want

( )16. I said, "Boys don't make such a noise."

⟶I told the boys ________ make such a noise.

a. that didn't

b. didn't

c. that they didn't

d. not to

36 *She Was Not Amused**

她并不觉得好笑

> Geofferey ***asked*** Jenny ***if*** she ***had*** enjoyed the speech.
>
> ——→"***Did*** you ***enjoy*** the speech, Jenney?" Geofferey ***asked.***

本课重点 间接引语——→直接引语(Ⅱ)

Geofferey Hampden has a large circle of friends and is very popular at parties. Everybody admires him for his fine sense of humour —— everybody, that is, except his six-year-old daughter, Jenny.

杰沃弗莱·汉普顿交游甚广,在各种聚会上深受大家欢迎。每个人都钦佩他高雅的幽默感。——每个人,也就是说除了他的六岁的女儿詹尼以外。

Recently, one of Geofferey's closest friends asked him to

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第63课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第120页。

make a speech at a wedding reception. This is the sort of thing that Geofferey loves. He prepared the speech carefully and went to the wedding with Jenny. He had included a large number of funny stories in the speech and, of course, it was a great success.
不久前,杰沃弗莱最亲密的朋友中有一位请他在一个婚礼招待会上讲话。这正是杰沃弗莱喜欢做的那种事。他精心准备了演说词同詹尼一起去参加婚礼了。他在演说词中包括进许多引人发笑的故事,当然,这次讲话是一次巨大的成功。
As soon as he had finished, ***Jenny told him*** she wanted to go home. Geofferey was a little disappointed by this but he did as his daughter asked.
他一结束讲话,詹尼对他说她要回家了。杰沃弗莱对此感到有点失望,但是他还是按照他女儿的要求做了。
On the way home, ***he asked*** Jenny ***if*** she had enjoyed the speech. To his surprise, ***she said*** she ***hadn't***. ***Geofferey asked*** her why this was so and ***she told him*** that she did not like to see so many people laughing at him!
在回家途中,他问詹尼她是否喜欢这次讲话。使他吃惊的是,她说她不喜欢。杰沃弗莱问她为什么不喜欢,她告诉他,她不喜欢看到这么多人嘲笑他。

【讲解】

1. 根据课文最后两段把间接引语改为直接引语,这样,可以进一步了解两种引语的结构和表达法。

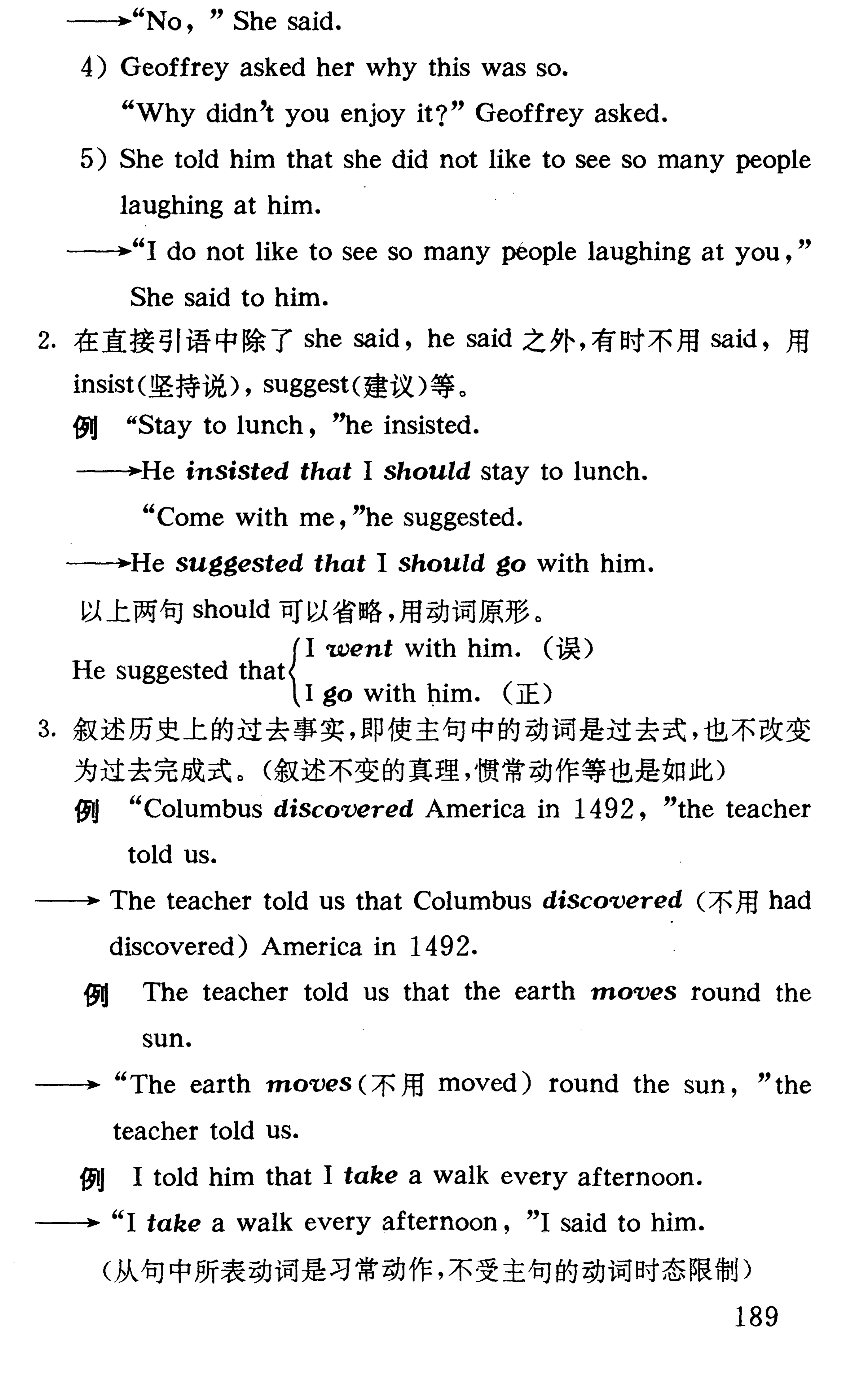
   1) Jenny told him she wanted to go home.

   ——→"I want to go home," Jenny told him.

   2) He asked Jenny if she had enjoyed the speech.

   ——→"Did you enjoy the speech, Jenny?" He asked.

   3) She said she hadn't.



——→"No," She said.

4) Geoffrey asked her why this was so.

"Why didn't you enjoy it?" Geoffrey asked.

5) She told him that she did not like to see so many people laughing at him.

——→"I do not like to see so many people laughing at you," She said to him.

2. 在直接引语中除了 she said, he said 之外,有时不用 said, 用 insist(坚持说), suggest(建议)等。

例 "Stay to lunch," he insisted.

——→He ***insisted that*** I ***should*** stay to lunch.

"Come with me," he suggested.

——→He ***suggested that*** I ***should go*** with him.

以上两句 should 可以省略,用动词原形。

He suggested that { I ***went*** with him. (误)
I ***go*** with him. (正) }

3. 叙述历史上的过去事实,即使主句中的动词是过去式,也不改变为过去完成式。(叙述不变的真理,惯常动作等也是如此)

例 "Columbus ***discovered*** America in 1492," the teacher told us.

——→ The teacher told us that Columbus ***discovered*** (不用 had discovered) America in 1492.

例 The teacher told us that the earth ***moves*** round the sun.

——→ "The earth ***moves***(不用 moved) round the sun," the teacher told us.

例 I told him that I ***take*** a walk every afternoon.

——→ "I ***take*** a walk every afternoon," I said to him.

(从句中所表动词是习常动作,不受主句的动词时态限制)

【语言材料】

1. has a large circle of friends　交游甚广
2. be popular　受人欢迎
3. sense of humour　幽默感
4. make a speech　作一次讲话
5. wedding reception　婚礼招待会
6. the sort of thing　那种事
7. a success　一次成功
8. be disappointed　感到失望
9. on the way to　在去…途中(跟名词)
   on the way home　在去家途中
10. to one's surprise　使某人吃惊的是…
11. see＋宾语＋ing 句型　…***see*** so many people ***laughing*** at him.
12. she was not amused　be amused＝感到好笑
    be not amused＝感到索然无味,并不好笑

【习题】

选择填空：

(　) 1. He made a speech at a wedding reception. He spoke during the ________.

a. marriage　　b. party
c. wedding　　d. ceremony

(　) 2. He included some funny stories. He ________.

a. put them in
b. said some interesting stories
c. always liked to say stories funny enough
d. had funny stories said

(　) 3. Everybody admires him because ________ a fine sense of humour.

a. he's got b. has he

c. he got d. he is

( ) 4. ________ Jenny, everyone admires him.

a. Beside b. Except

c. Expect d. Except for

( ) 5. It was a great success. He managed ________.

a. to make everyone laugh b. to make everyone to laugh

c. to have everyone laugh d. to be amused

( ) 6. Geoffrey was a little disappointed. He was ________ disappointed.

a. somehow b. somewhat

c. something d. seemed

( ) 7. "Buy a car," he suggested.

⟶ He suggested that I ________ a car.

a. should buy b. bought

c. shall buy d. had better to buy

( ) 8. "Go and send for a doctor," he insisted.

⟶ He insisted that I ________ a doctor.

a. send for b. sent for

c. should go for d. must send for

( ) 9. He suggested that you should send him a telegram.

⟶ "________," he suggeted.

a. Why not sent him a telegram

b. Send him a telegram

c. Why not send a telegram to him

d. Do sent him a message

( )10. He asked me where I lived.

⟶ He asked, "________?"

a. where do you live in

b. where you live in

c. At what place do you stay in

d. where do you live

( )11. He said that up to that time all had gone well.

⟶ He said, "Up to that time all ________. "

a. had gone well   b. gone well

c. had went well   d. had been gone well

( )12. He says, "I am busy. "

⟶ He says that ________ busy.

a. he was   b. he is

c. he's been   d. he had been

( )13. He said he could not play with me, for he had to learn his lessons.

⟶ "I can not play with you, for I ________ learn my lessons," I said.

a. had got to   b. must

c. have got   d. got to

( )14. He asked me which was the magazine I asked for.

⟶ He said, "Which ________ you asked for?"

a. magazine is that   b. is the magazine

c. magazine is this   d. magazine this is

( )15. He told the boys to be quiet.

⟶ He said to the boys, "________. "

a. You quiet   b. You mut quiet

c. To be quiet   d. Be quiet

( )16. She told the girls not to make such a noise.

⟶ She said, "Girls, ________ make such a noise. "

a. why   b. for what

c. don't   d. not

( )17. He asked me to wait a minute.

⟶ He said to me, "________. "   a. Please wait a minut

b. Wait here a minute

c. You'll have to wait a moment

d. Just a moment

( )18. The officer ordered him to fire.

⟶ "________, "cried the officer to him.

a. Fire　　b. To fire

c. Why not fire　　d. Don't you fire

(　)19. He asked me why I had struck his dog.

⟶ He said to me, "Why ________ my dog?"

a. do you strike　　b. did you strick

c. you struck　　d. did you strike

(　)20. He said that he had been there several times.

⟶ He said, "I ________ several times."

a. have been to there　　b. have been here

c. came here　　d. have gone there

37　*One Man in a Boat**

孤舟独钓

> ***Fishing*** is..., Instead of ***catching***...,
>
> After ***having***...

本课重点　动名词作主语，作介词宾语及介词＋动名词引起的状语（Ⅰ）

Fishing is my favourite sport. I often fish for hours without ***catching*** anything. But this does not worry me. Some fishermen are unlucky. Instead of ***catching*** fish, they catch old boots and rubbish. I am even less lucky. I never catch any-

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第20课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第36页。

thing —— not even old boots.
钓鱼是我最心爱的消遣。我常常钓好几个小时却什么鱼也钓不到，但是这并不使我担忧。有些钓鱼的人运气是不好的，他们非但钓不到鱼，只是钓到一些破旧的靴子和废物。我的运气就更不好了，我从未钓到过什么东西——甚至连破旧的靴子也没有钓到过。

After having spent whole mornings on the river, I always go home with an empty bag. "You must give up ***fishing***!" my friends say. "It's a waste of time." But they don't realize one important thing. I'm not really interested in ***fishing***. I am only interested in ***sitting*** in a boat and ***doing*** nothing at all!
在河上消磨了整个上午之后，我总是拎着空包回家。"你应该别钓鱼了！"我的朋友说。"那简直是浪费时间。"但是他们并不理解一个很重要的问题：我并不是真正对钓鱼感兴趣。我感兴趣的只是坐在船上什么事也不干！

【讲解】

1. 本课主要谈动名词作主语，动名词作介词宾语及介词＋动名词所引起的状语三种。
   a）动名词作主语模式：动名词（主语）＋谓语（或 be＋表语）
      例 ***Heating*** water doesn't ***change*** its chemical composition.
      把水加热并不改变水的化学成分。
      Seeing is believing.
      眼见为实。
   b）动名词作介词宾语模式：介词＋ing

例 He is fond ***of playing*** table tennis.

他喜欢打乒乓球。

They are keen ***on enjoying*** Chinese classic music.

他们十分渴望欣赏中国古典音乐。

c）动名词不能单独作状语，必须构成介词短语才行：介词＋ing

例 ***Before leaving*** the room, he turned off the radio.

在离开房间前，他把收音机关了。

（课文）***After having*** spent whole mornings on the river, I always go home with an empty bag.

2. 有时下列两种结构，并无多大区别，都可以用。

After looking at his watch, he hurried to the station.
看了他的手表之后，他匆忙赶到车站去。
＝***After having looked*** at his watch, …

【语言材料】

1. for hours　好几个小时
2. instead of　非但没有，非但不
3. be less lucky　＝be not so lucky
4. not even　甚至连…也没有…
5. give up　放弃
6. it's a waste of time　那是浪费时间
7. be interested in　对…感兴趣
8. not even 的句型　[否定]＋not even

a）He did***n't*** find the important letter, ***not even*** its envelope.

他没有找到那封重要的信件，甚至连信的信封也没有找到。

b）They did***n't*** come to see me off last night, ***not even*** give me a telephone call.

他们昨天夜里没有来送我行，甚至连一个电话都不打给我。

c）本课：I ***never*** catch anything —— ***not even*** old boots.

=I ***never*** catch anything —— ***not even catch*** old boots.

9. it's a waste of time +ing 句型：

It's a waste of time ***talking*** to him.

跟他讲话简直是浪费时间。

单独说"那是浪费时间"，可以用 it's waste of time（不用 a 也是可以的），waste 是名词。

【习题】

选择填空

( ) 1. I am only interested in doing nothing. That's ________ I'm interested in.

a. how often　　b. all

c. where　　d. the one

( ) 2. He doens't catch anything. He never catches ________.

a. something　　b. anything

c. everything　　d. nothing

( ) 3. I'm even less lucky. I'm ________ lucky.

a. not so　　b. more than

c. not much　　d. not too

( ) 4. Did he go to work without ________ anything for breakfast?

a. to have　　b. had

c. have　　d. having

( ) 5. He left the restaurant ________ the bill.

a. not paid　　b. and without paying

c. without paying　　d. not even paying for

( ) 6. A："It's expensive to stay at big hotels".

B："I'm sure it is. ________ big hotels must be expensive（昂贵，费钱）."

a. To staying at　　b. Stay at

c. After staying at　　d. Staying at

( ) 7. A:"It's easier to read than to write."

B:"I'm sure it is. ________ must be easier."

a. Reading　　b. Reading lot of books

c. To read informations　　d. To reading

( ) 8. After ________ a few fish, we prepared a delicious (可口的) breakfast.

a. catching　　b. having catching

c. had caught　　d. we catching

( ) 9. On ________ the door open, he found himself face to face with an old friend of his.

a. having pushing　　b. having pushed

c. pushing open　　d. pushed

( )10. ________ the river needs boats.

a. Crossing　　b. Crossing over

c. Acrossing　　d. Acrossing over

( )11. Instead of ________ the elevator(电梯), they walked down the stairs.

a. taking　　b. having taken

c. being taken　　d. taking into

( )12. Instead of ________ him the money; he gave it to me.

a. giving back　　b. gave back

c. giving to　　d. giving

( )13. "Which is your favourite sport?" "________."

a. Skating(滑冰)　　b. Volley balling one

c. To fishing　　d. Sking(滑雪)

( )14. You must give up fishing. You must ________ fishing.

a. stop to　　b. stop

c. never do to　　d. never again

( )15. They had not found anything ________ a piece of cake.

a. even not　　b. not even

c. not of　　d. instead of found

( )16. Does he always go ________ with an empty bag?

a. fishing b. to home

c. to there d. back to home

( )17. He said, "Excuse me for ________ you."

a. troubling b. having troubling

c. having not telling d. my troubled

( )18. In ________ so, we can work wonders. (创奇迹)

a. doing b. having doing

c. being doing d. doing such works

( )19. He has no chance of ________ the game.

a. wining b. woning

c. winning d. having wined

( )20. I was just on the point of (正欲)________ when he called.

a. leaving

b. wenting away

c. writting a letter to my friend

d. threwing away the rubbish

38 *Through the Forest**

穿过森林

The strap ***needs mending.***

本课重点： 动名词和不定式与动词的搭配(Ⅱ)

Mrs Anne Sterling did not think of the risk she was taking when she ran through a forest after two men. They had rushed up to

---

选自《新概念英语》第2册第44课。

参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)84页。

her while she was having a picnic at the edge of a forest with her children and tried to steal her handbag.

当安妮·斯特林夫人穿过森林追赶两个男人时，她没有想到自己所冒的险。这两个男人曾向她冲过去并企图偷走她的手提包，那时，她正在森林的尽头（靠近森林）同她的孩子们进野餐。

In the struggle, the strap broke and, with the bag in their possession, both men ***started running*** through the trees. Mrs Sterling got so angry that she ran after them. She was soon out of breath, but she ***continued to*** run.

在争夺中，手提包的包带断了，由于包落在这两个人手中他们就拔腿穿过森林跑去。斯特林夫人非常生气，就在他们后面追赶。她很快就上气不接下气，但是她继续奔跑。

When she caught up with them, she saw that they had sat down and were going through the contents of the bag, so she ran straight at them. The men got such a fright that they dropped the bag and ran away. "The strap ***needs mending***," said Mrs Sterling later, "but they did not steal anything."

当她赶上他们的时候，她看见他们已坐了下来正在翻看包里的东西，所以她向他们直奔过去。这两个男人大为吃惊，丢开手提包就跑掉了。"包带需要修理了，"斯特林夫人后来说，"但他们什么也没有偷去。"

【讲解】

1. 有些动词既可以跟动名词也可跟不定式。

例 The men started running through the trees.

=The men started to run through the trees.

另外尚有 begin to run (begin running), continue to run (continre running)等。

2. 有些动词跟动名词用的是主动语态，跟不定式用的是被动语态。

例 My watch needs ***oiling***(动名词).

My watch needs ***to be oiled***(过去分词).

我的表需要擦油。

Your pipe wants ***cleaning.*** (动名词)

Your pipe wants ***to be cleaned.*** (过去分词)

你的烟斗要擦干净。

注 动名词的被动语态使用 being+过去分词

She was afraid of ***being recognized.***

她害怕被人认出来。

4. 有的动词和词组跟不定式或动名词意思发生变化。

如：hate 这个词跟不定式=不愿意，跟动名词=一般来说不愿意，或表示总是不愿意，讨厌。

1) He said to me, "I ***hate to*** do it."

他对我说："我不愿意做这件事。"

He said to me, "I ***hate asking*** favours."

他对我说："我讨厌请别人(求人)帮忙做事。"

2) ***It is no use to*** ask him.

问他是没有用的。(也许此人这次不了解情况)

It is no use asking him.

问他一无用处，白搭。(此人精神已错乱，不明事理)

3) I ***love*** (like) playing the piano.

我喜欢弹钢琴。

She said she'***d love to*** come sometime.

她说某一天她愿意来的。

I'***d love to*** (like to) sit in garden.

我喜欢坐在花园里。

5. 有些词组后面有一个 to，这个 to 不是不定式而是介词，因此要用动名词，如：

1) I'm ***looking forward to*** seeing him tomorrow.

我盼望明天见到他。

2)He ***is accustomed to*** getting up early.

他习惯早起。

3) She ***is used to*** getting up early.

她习惯早起。

4) ***What do you say to*** having a cup of coffee?

喝杯咖啡你看怎么样？

5) She ***devotes*** too much time ***to*** eating.

她把时间主要用在吃的方面去了。

【语言材料】

1. take a risk　冒险
2. run after　追赶（比较：run behind，跟在别人后面跑）
3. rush up to　向…冲上来（去）
4. at thd edge of　在…的尽头
5. have a picnic　吃野餐
6. with...in one's possession　由于…在某人手中，为某人所掌握
7. get angry　生气
8. be out of breath　上气不接下气
9. continue to　继续（或 continue＋ing）
10. catch up with　追上，赶上
11. go through　翻看
12. the contents of　…的内容（里面的东西）
13. run straight at　...向…直奔过去（straight 是副词）
14. got a fright　吃惊
15. run away　逃走
16. drop　手一松让什么东西自然落地，即：丢了，丢开

17. so＋(形，副)…that } 句型对比
such (a) ＋(名)…that }

She got [so] angry(形) [that] she ran after them.

She got [such a] fright (名) [that] she ran away.

例 It gave him ***such a shock*** (使他大吃一惊) ***that*** his face turned white. (以致他吓得脸如土色)

＝He was **so** {frightened at / shocked by} it ***that*** his face turned white.

例 She shut the window with ***such*** force ***that*** the glass broke.

她关窗用力那么重以致把玻璃都震碎了。

注意 force 前不用 such a，(force 作为力量解，为不可数名词)

＝She shut the window with ***such a bang*** (砰) ***that*** the glass broke.

＝She shut the window **so** ***hard*** (副) ***that*** the glass broke.

【习题】

I．根据括号内动词联系上下文给予正确形式：

1. I shall be looking forward to ________(see) you soon.
2. Would you like ________(come) with me?
3. I'd love to ________(see) that film.
4. He accusted(指控)me of ________(steal) the money.
5. she's accustomed to ________(work) very hard.
6. These shirts needs ________(iron 熨烫)
7. I hate ________(leave) so early, but I'm afraid I have to.
8. They continued ________(argue 争论) till after midnight.
9. You mustn't come into this room without ________(knock) first.

10. I got tired of(厌烦)________(wait) so I left.

11. Just as I was going out it began ________(rain)

12. I don't believe in(主张)________(work) too hard.

13. Do they believe in(信奉) the students ________(teach) on this method?

14. They were afraid of ________(criticise 批评)

15. Is he used to ________(speak) Russian?

16. What do you say ________(play) a game of chess? (下棋)

Ⅱ. 选择填空：

( ) 1. She was soon out of breath, but she continued ________.

a. to running　　b. to run

c. runing　　d. ran

( ) 2. They didn't steal anything. They ________ nothing.

a. stealed　　b. stealen

c. stolen　　d. stole

( ) 3. The strap needs mending. It ________.

a. need to be mended　　b. has to be mended

c. must be mending　　d. to be repaired

( ) 4. They got such a fright. They ________.

a. were so frightful　　b. were so frightened

c. got such shock　　d. were so terrible

( ) 5. She took a risk. What she did was ________.

a. brave　　b. dangerous

c. clever　　d. stupid

( ) 6. They tried to steal her handbag. They tried to ________ her of her handbag.

a. rob　　b. steal

c. take away　　d. catch

( ) 7. She was at the edge of the forest. She was ________ the forest.

a. near　　b. at the end of

c. at the tip of　　d. at the beginnig of

( ) 8. I don't think she devoted so much time ________.

a. watching TV　　　　b. to watch TV

c. to watching TV　　　　d. to playing piano

(　) 9. I used to ________ up early but I don't any more.

a. getting　　　　b. be getting

c. have got　　　　d. get

(　) 10. I must apologize(表示歉意) for ________ you know earlier.

a. letting not　　　　b. not let

c. didn't let　　　　d. not letting

39 *Persistent*[*]

难以摆脱

> You are not ***busy doing*** anything, are you?
> Would you ***mind my coming*** with you?

本课重点　跟动名词的词，词组及动名词复合结构(Ⅲ)

I crossed the street to ***avoid*** meeting him, but he saw me and ***came*** running towards me. ***It was no use*** pretending that I had not seen him, so I waved to him. I never ***enjoy*** meeting Bert Dykes.

我横穿马路，目的是为了躲开他不和他见面，但是他却看见了我，一路向我奔过来。装作不曾看见他是一无用处了，因此我向他挥手示意。我一向不高兴和伯特·戴克斯见面。

He never has anything to do. No matter how busy you are, he

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第 2 册第 68 课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第 127 页)。

always ***insists on*** coming with you. I had to think of ***a way of preventing*** him ***from following*** me around all morning. 他从来就是无所事事。不管你有多忙，他总是执意要跟着你。我只得想办法不使他一个上午跟着我到处转。

"Hullo, Bert," I said. "***Fancy*** meeting you here!"

"Hullo, Elizabeth," Bert answered. "I was just wondering how to spend the morning —— until I saw you. You're not ***busy*** doing anything, are you?"

"No, not at all," I answered. "I'm going to..."

"Would you ***mind my coming*** with you?" he asked, before I had ***finished*** speaking.

"Not at all," I lied, "but I'm going to the dentist."

"Then I'll come with you," he answered. "There's always plenty to read in the ***waiting*** room!"

"你好，伯特，"我说。"真想不到在这儿见到你！"

"你好，伊丽莎白，"伯特回答说。"在我见到你之前，我刚才还在发愁如何消磨这一上午时间呢。你不在忙什么，是吗？"

"是的，一点儿也不忙什么，"我回答说。"我打算去…"

"我跟你一起去，你不介意吧？"他问道，我话还没有讲完他就抢先问了。

"哪儿的话呀，一点不介意，"我撒谎说，"不过我打算去看牙医生。"

"那末我跟你一起去吧，"他答道。"候诊室里总是有许多书报可以读读的！"

【讲解】

1. 当你在马路上遇见一个乞丐时，这个乞丐老是跟在你后面讨钱不离开，这个乞丐就是一个 persistent beggar(打发不走的乞丐)。本课标题 persistent 是个形容词，意思是难以摆脱的…，打发不走的…。
2. 本课动名词使用示例主要有三个方面：
   a）动名词与某些词及词组连用：
   avoid(避免) It is no use, enjoy, busy, insist on (坚持) prevent from, fancy(喜欢，真想不到，)mind, finish, excuse, forgive(原谅，) it is not worth (不值得), stand (忍受), deny(否认，) remember(记得曾经).
   b）动名词的复合结构：
   Would you mind [my] coming with you?

   c）动名词作定语：
   waiting room.
2. 动名词的复合结构多用代词所有格或名词所有格。

I'm sure that he will succeed.
我确信他将成功：
=I'm sure of ***his*** succeeding.
I'm sure of my ***brother's succeeding.***

(辨)
It is diffcult for me to do so.
对我来说很难去这样做。
=My doing so is difficut. (这不是动名词复合结构，这是动名词作主语)

He insisted on ***his*** knowing my reason.
他坚持要知道我的理由是什么。
He insisted ***my*** telling him the reason.
他一定要我告诉他那理由。

I am glad that the examination is over.
考试已过去我感到高兴。
=I am glad of ***the examination's being*** over.
=I am glad of ***its being*** over.
I am glad of its over. （误）

【语言材料】

1. cross　横穿，只用一个词，=go across，不说 cross over 或 across over.
2. come running　一路奔过来，running 不是动名词，是分词。
   如 She came hurrying in. 她赶忙走进来。
3. it is no use　一无用处
4. pretend that　假装
5. no matter how　=howerver，不管有多么…
6. insist on　坚持要，一定要
7. come with　跟某人一起去（=go with）
8. think of a way of　想出一条…办法
9. prevent...from　不使…
10. there is plenty to　有不少…可供…
11. not at all　别人提出询问是否介意（反对）时，可用 not at all= I do***n't*** mind ***at all***，也可以说 not in the least=I do not mind in the least.

【习题】

Ⅰ. 用动词适当形式

1. She completely denied ________(take) it.
2. Fancy ________(you, talk) like that!
3. I don't mind ________(wait).
4. Can't you see I'm busy ________(write)?
5. Forgive ________(I, interrupt 打扰) you.

6. It's no use ________(cry)about it.

7. I insist on ________(you, give)me an answer.

8. It isn't worth ________(talk)about your family.

9. He can't stand people ________(talk big 吹牛).

10. He remembers ________(see) her last week.

11. What does she fancy ________(do)?

12. They avoid ________(travel) during rush hour. (高峰时间)

13. I don't know whether they enjoy ________(play)football.

14. He doesn't mind ________(open)the window.

15. There was a deadly silence after he had finished ________(speak).

16. Excuse ________(I, open) your letter by mistake.

17. There was nothing to prevent him from ________(follow) me around.

18. I won't stand ________(she, talk) to me like that.

19. The rain prevented me ________(come).

20. It is no use ________(wory)this time, John.

Ⅱ. 阅读下列短文,找出两个动名词(短文中有4个带ing的词):

*The Lost Cow**

失踪的奶牛

It was autumn and Farmer Barnes was busy sawing logs.

Little John ran into the yard, shouting, "She's gone! She's gone! She's gone!"

Farmer Barnes stopped sawing and said, "Who? What? Where?"

His wife Emily came out, wiping her hands on her apron.

Baby Candy sat up in her pram and opened her eyes very wide.

They all looked at little John and he said, "***Bluebell***!"

It *is* Bluebell! She's run away again!

---

* 节选自《最新英国初级英语》第1册第84页.

秋天，农夫彭斯正忙着锯干柴。

小约翰奔着跑进院子，嚷嚷说，“她不见了！她不见了！她不见了！”

农夫彭斯停下锯不锯干柴了，说道，“谁不见了？什么不见了？到哪儿去了？”

他的妻子埃米莉走了出来，一面在她的围裙上擦着手。

婴儿坎弟在她的童车上坐了起来，双眼睁得大大的。他们都看着小约翰，他说，“母牛兰铃不见了！”

是兰铃不见了！她又跑掉了！

40 *Asking for Trouble**

自找麻烦

I'd prefer ***to***…, started ***to***…, excuse ***my*** interrupting, the ***shouting*** woke up…

本课重点 动名词作介词宾语，动名词作主语，动名词复合结构，动名词与动词的搭配，可以跟动名词或不定式的动词（Ⅳ）

It must have been about two in the morning when I returned home. I tried to wake up my wife ***by ringing*** the door-bell, but she was fast asleep, so I got a ladder from the shed in the garden, put it against the wall, and ***began climbing*** towards the bedroom window.

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第二册第 92 课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第 171 页。

当我回家时，时间谅必是凌晨两点左右了。我按了门铃，想唤醒我的妻子，但是她睡得很熟。于是我从花园的棚子里搬来一个梯子，把它靠在墙上，开始向卧室的窗子爬去。

I was almost there when a sarcastic voice below said, "I don't think the windows ***need cleaning*** at this time of the night." I looked down and nearly fell off the ladder when I saw a policeman. I immediately ***regretted answering*** in the way I did, but I said, "I ***enjoy cleaning*** windows at night."

我几乎要爬到窗子时，突然下面传来一种讽刺人的讲话声，"我认为在夜间这个时候窗子不需要擦的吧。"我往下看了看，当我看到一个警察时，我差一点从梯子上掉下来。我马上对我的回答方式感到后悔，遗憾的是我所说的竟是，"我就是喜欢在夜间擦窗子。"

"So do I," anwered the policeman in the same tone. "***Excuse my interrupting*** you. I ***hate to*** interrupt a man when he's ***busy working***, but would you ***mind coming*** with me to the station?"

"Well, ***I'd prefer to stay*** here," I said. "You see, I've forgotten my key."

"Your what?" he called.

"My key," I shouted.

Fortunately, the ***shouting*** woke up my wife who opened the window just as the policeman had ***started to*** climb towards me.

"我也喜欢，"警察以同样的声调回答说。"原谅我打扰你了。当一个人忙着干活的时候，我是最不愿意打扰他了，不过，跟我去一趟

警察局，你介意吗？”

“呃，我宁愿呆在这里，”我说。“你知道，我忘了带钥匙了。”

“你的什么？”他叫喊说。

“我的钥匙，”我叫嚷着说。

幸运的是，喊叫声惊醒了我的妻子，正当那个警察已经向我爬来时，她打开了窗户。

【讲解】

我们学了四课动名词，这一课可以说是动名词的主要用法的集大成之作了。要写到这样的短文，既不失幽默风趣又能兼顾到写作要求，实在非高手不行。

这一篇是动名词用法的总复习。其中有几个问题需要再作讲解：

1. prefer to 是宁愿，更喜欢的意思，但 prefer 也可直接跟动名词。试比较下列三式：

① I prefer standing.

② I prefer to stand here.

③ I'd prefer to stand here.

I'd prefer to＝I would (should) prefer to. 意思是我更倾向于…，更喜欢…，这跟 I would rather＋动词原形意思相近。因此，I'd prefer to live abroad（我更喜欢住在国外），＝I'd rather live abroad.

2. 关于 so do I＝I do, too.

例 He reads a lot and { so do I. / I do, too (I do the same).

He doesn't read much and { neither do I. / nor do I. / I don't, either.

He can swim and { so can I. / I can, too.

但要注意 dislike 一词：

① She ***dislikes*** reading books.

我也不喜欢→{不用 neither do I.
而用 so do I.

② She ***doesn't like*** reading books.

我也不喜欢→{不用 so do I.
而用 neither do I.

因为 dislike 一词,不含 not 的否定词,故用 so do I.

【语言材料】

1. must have been　谅必已是
2. wake up　唤醒
3. be fast asleep　睡得很熟＝be sound asleep, sleep deeply (soundly)
4. against the wall　靠墙
5. at this time of...　在…的这个时候
6. fall off　从…掉下来＝fall down from
7. I'd prefer to　我宁愿,我觉得…更好些
8. who opened　＝and she opened
9. just as　正当

【习题】

选择填空

(　) 1. He is afraid ________ here alone.

a. to staying　　b. of staying
c. for staying　　d. with staying

(　) 2. He insists ________ with you.

a. to come　　b. that she will go
c. by going　　d. on coming

(　) 3. He apologized ________ him.

a. for pushing　　b. with interrupting
c. interrupting　　d. by pushing

(　) 4. She's keen ________ part in the race.

a. on taking b. to take
c. about taking d. for taking

( ) 5. We are looking forward with hope ________ you.
a. to meet b. to welcoming for
c. to see d. to meeting

( ) 6. I'd prefer to stay here. That's what I'd ________.
a. have done b. do best
c. rather to stay d. rather do

( ) 7. She was fast asleep. She ________.
a. was soundly asleep b. was deeply asleep
c. slept sound d. slept deeply

( ) 8. I don't think the windows need cleaning. They don't need ________.
a. clearing b. to clear
c. to be cleaned d. to be cleard

( ) 9. Would you mind coming with me? I'd like ________.
a. you coming b. to come
c. your to coming d. you to come

( )10. The policeman suspected (疑心)that the man was ________.
a. a thief b. a worker
c. climbing the ladder d. mad

( )11. He hasn't had breakfast. ________ I.
a. Neither do b. So do
c. Neither hasn't d. Nor have

( )12. He likes classical music. ________.
a. So likes I b. I like either
c. Neither do I d. So do I

( )13. She won't buy a new dress. ________ I.
a. Neither won't b. Nor won't
c. So do I d. Neither shall

( )14. She could speak French. ________ I.
a. So do b. So could
c. So did d. Nor couldn't

( )15. "Would you mind coming with me to the station ? "

"________."

a. Not to the least　　　　b. That's all right

c. I deny coming with you　　　　d. Not at all

41 *A Polite Request**

彬彬有礼的请求

You ***will*** enjoy your stay here ***if*** you ***pay*** attention to our street signs.

本课重点　"if"不是虚拟语气，是"只要…就…"indicative present，现在直陈式（I）

If you ***park*** your car in the wrong place, a traffic policeman ***will*** soon find it. You ***will*** be very lucky ***if*** he ***lets*** you go without a ticket.

只要（if＝so long as）你把车子停错了地方，交通警察就会马上发现。只要他让你走不给你开传票，你就算是很幸运的了。

However, this does not always happen. Traffic police are sometimes very polite. During a holiday in Sweden, I found this note on by car: "Sir, we wel-

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第16课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第27页。

come you to our city. This is a 'No Parking' area, You ***will*** enjoy your stay here ***if*** you ***pay*** attention to our street signs. This note is only a reminder." ***If*** you ***receive*** a request like this, you ***cannot*** fail to obey it!

不过，这样的情况是不常发生的。交通警察有时很有礼貌。在瑞典度假期间，我在自己的车上发现这样一个条子："先生，我们欢迎你到我们的城市来。这是一个'不准停车'的地区。只要你注意我们的交通指示牌，你在这里逗留就会感到愉快。这张条子仅向你作一提示而已。"只要你收到这样一个请求，你就一定会照办的。

【讲解】

1. 日本著名语法学家山崎贞在其再版达百次的著名畅销书《自修英语语法大全》一书中谈到这一结构，称之谓"indicative present"（现在直陈式）。

   这本书虽用日语写成，但条理清楚。所谓"直陈式"就是"非虚拟语气"。虽有 if，只是与 so long as（只要）的内涵有关，也可说"如果"，"只要"(provided)。

   对比下列三式：

   只要我们有钱的话，我们明年**就**去欧洲访问。

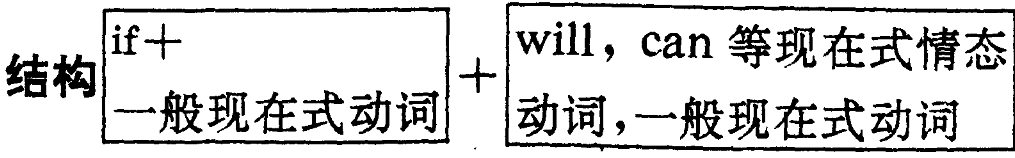
   ① We'***ll*** visit Europe next year ***so long as*** we ***have*** the money.

   ② ***Provided*** (that) we ***have*** the money. We'***ll*** visit Europe next year.

   ③ ***If*** we ***have*** the money, we'***ll*** visit Europe next year.

   《新概念英语》把这一类，归为 if 第一式。

2. 名称并不重要。我所注目的是两件事，一是结构，二是概念：

结构 

概念 表示只要达到某种程度就一定会产生某种结果，反之，亦然。表示一种可能的事实。

如：If you see him, ask him to ring me up.（只要你看到他，就叫他打电话给我）。你可能看到他，也可能不。但看到他的可能性是很大的，不是不可能实现的。有的人称之谓"真实条件句"也未尝不可。这同不可能实现的虚拟语气不同虚拟语气将在下一课涉及。

3. 对比：

If you ***open*** the door you ***will*** get a surprise.
只要你把门打开，你**一定会**大吃一惊的。（直陈式）
If you ***opened*** the door you ***would*** get a surprise.
假使你把门打开的话你**也许要**大吃一惊的。（虚拟式）

If they ***can*** help you, they ***will.***
只要他们能帮助你，他们**一定会**帮助的。（有可能）
If they ***could*** help you, they ***would.***
假使他们有能力帮助你的话，他们**说不定**会帮助的。（不一定有可能）

4. if 后面不用 will，若有，则 if you will = please, will you please.

【语言材料】

1. wrong place　不是地方
2. be lucky　幸运
3. be polite　有礼貌，客气
4. pay attention to　注意
5. street signs　马路上的交通指示牌
6. cannot fail to　不会不，一定会(fail to＝不会，不能)

   例 Go straight on for half a mile and you ***can not fail to*** find the hospital.
   朝前一直走半英里，你一定会找到那医院的。
7. reminder　这个词有的人解释为"提醒物"。我们中国人可从来不讲"提醒物"，老百姓听不懂这种话。凡是一封信，一张便条，甚

至一席话促使某人不致忘记的提示都称为 reminder.

例 He seems to have fogotten his promise, I must ***send him a reminder.***

他看来已经忘了他的诺言，我必须写封信提醒他。(这里 reminder 就等于一封信)

例 His remark is ***a timely reminder.***

他的话是及时的提示。(这里 reminder 就等于讲的话)

例 She left a note as ***a reminder*** to call back.

她留下一张条子作为回电话的备忘。(这里 reminder 就等于备忘)

【习题】

Ⅰ. 括号内的动词给予正确形式

1. If he plays well, he ________(get)into the football team.
2. I shall take an umbrella with me if it ________(rain).
3. You can only learn if you ________(pay) attention.
4. If you don't work hard, you ________(never, pass) this test.
5. They will see him if he ________(be) here before nine o'clock.
6. If he ________(enjoy) concerts, why doesn't he come with us?
7. If you are away. I ________(look) after your house.
8. If you ________(want) me to do something, don't forget to say "please".
9. If I ________(listen) to the radio, don't tell me to do my homework.
10. You will miss the train if you ________(not, hurry)

Ⅱ. 选择填空：

( ) 1. If you park your car in the ________ place you won't receive a ticket.

a. wrong　　b. "No Parking"

c. good　　d. right

( ) 2. We welcome you to our city. You ________ to our city.

a. are welcome　　b. welcome

c. have welcomed　　d. can't fail to welcome

( ) 3. You will enjoy your stay. It will ________ you.

a. please　　b. enjoy

c. amuse　　d. pleasant

( ) 4. This note is only a reminder. it will help ________.

a. you remind　　b. your remembrance

c. you to remember　　d. to think of the past

( ) 5. You cannot fail to obey it. You can't ________ this.

a. deny doing　　b. prevent for doing

c. won't do　　d. refuse to do

( ) 6. If you park your car in the wrong place, a traffic policeman will soon find it. =Park your car in the wrong place ________(那末) a traffic policeman will soon find it.

a. or　　b. so

c. that　　d. and

( ) 7. If you ***don't*** hurry up you'll be late=Hurry up ________ you'll be late.

a. and　　b. and so

c. that　　d. or

( ) 8. Show me the man you honour, ***and*** (那末)I will know what kind of a man you are.(你只要把你所尊敬的人告诉我,那末,我就能知道你的为人了。)

=If you ________ the man you honour, I'll know what kind of a man you are.

a. show up　　b. show me

c. speak me　　d. told me

( ) 9. ***If you will*** wait a moment I'll go and tell the manager that you are here. ________ a moment I'll go and tell the manager that you are here.

a. Please wait　　b. You please wait for

c. Would you please to wait　　d. Please you wait

( )10. If he ________(be) too old, I ________ employ(雇用)him.

a. is…willn't   b. is…will

c. is…shall   d. is…won't

( )11. If he has arrived, ________ him to come at once.

a. you will have told   b. you have to be telling

c. tell   d. you just told

( )12. Work hard ***and*** (那末) you will succeed . =If you work hard, you ________.

a. will success   b. will be succeed

c. will be successful   d. can't fail to success

( )13. I fear I shall fail. What shall I do if I ________?

a. not succeed   b. succeed not

c. failed   d. fail

( )14. I think it will rain. I ________ not start, if it ________.

a. will…raining   b. won't…rains

c. shall…goes to raining   d. shall…rains

( )15. If she has arrived, she ________ send me a word.

a. ought   b. can't fail

c. would   d. ought to

42 *Food and Talk**

多吃饭少讲话

> ***If*** you ***ate*** more and ***talked*** less we ***would*** both enjoy our dinner.

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第40课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第76页。

本课重点 一般虚拟语气(一般性假设),if 第二式(Ⅱ)

Last week at a dinner-party, the hostess asked me to sit next to Mrs Rumbold. Mrs Rumbold was a large, unsmiling lady in a tight black dress. She did not even look up when I took my seat beside her. Her eyes were fixed on her plate and in a short time, she was busy eating. I tried to make conversation.

上周在一次宴会上,女主人请我坐在伦伯尔特夫人边上。伦伯尔特夫人是一个身材高大不苟言笑的的女士,身着一件紧身的黑衣裙。当我坐到她身边时她甚至都不抬头看我一眼。她的眼睛直盯着她的盘子,不一会,她就忙着吃起来了。我设法找话讲。

"A new play ***is coming*** to 'The Gloge' soon," I said. "***Will*** you ***be seeing*** it?"

"No,"she answered.

"***Will*** you ***be spending*** your holidays abroad this year?" I asked.

"No,"she answered.

"***Will*** you ***be staying*** in England?" I asked.

"No,"she answered.

我说:"一出新戏**即将**在'全球剧场'演出。你**准备**去看吗?"

"不准备去,"她回答说。

我问道:"你**打算**今年去国外度假吗?"

"不打算,"她答道。

我问道:"你**打算**呆在英国吗?"

"不,"她回答说。

In despair, I asked her whether she was enjoying her dinner.

"Young man," she answered, "***if*** you ***ate*** more and ***talked*** less, we ***would*** both enjoy our dinner!"
绝望之余,我问她是否这餐饭吃得很满意。
"年青人呀," 她答道,"假使你多吃一点少讲一点,我们两人都会吃得很满意的。"(可惜你吃得太少讲得太多,要不是这样,该有多好。)

【讲解】

1. 一般虚拟就是打一个比方,"假如我处于你的地位…,假使他要玩火的话,如果我的父亲是一位经理的话…"等等,表示往往不能实现的,或未经证明能实现的事。这种一般虚拟在日常生活中用得很多。

   模式如下:

   if+{were,could / 过去式动词} →+would(should)等情态动词

   《红楼梦》中贾宝玉对林黛玉说:"你死了,我做和尚。"这就是一般虚拟。林黛玉一时也死不了,贾宝玉去做和尚只是一种表态而已。

   If you ***died***, I ***should*** (不用 shall) become a monk.

2. If I ***were*** a bird, I ***would*** fly to you.

   If I ***could*** fly , I ***would*** fly to you.

   人不能变成鸟,也不能飞,这些都是打一个比方,是不可能实现的事。

   注意 were, could ,它们的使用与人称无关。

3. I ***would*** buy it, if I ***had*** the money. (事实上没有钱,所以不买)

   =I do not buy it, because I have no money.

   If I ***were*** rich I ***would*** go abroad. (事实上并不富有,所以不出国)

   =I am not rich, so I don't go abroad.

4. 虚拟语气的将来式也用这一模式。例如:

   If I ***had*** the money ***tomorrow***, I ***would*** buy it.

   If I ***were*** rich ***one day*** I ***would*** go abroad.

【语言材料】

1. next to　靠在…边上=beside
2. look up　抬眼看一看
3. take one's seat　就座
4. (eyes) are fixerd on　眼睛集中一处看…
5. make conversation　进行交谈，找话讲
6. will be+ing　打算，准备
7. spend one's holidays　度假
8. stay in　呆在
9. in despair　处于绝望境地
10. we would both 不能写成 we both would，both 应在助动词之后。would 称为情态动词，这一类动词其实都属于助动词的范畴。

例　you must ***both*** come over some evening.

那一天晚上你们两个都得到这儿来。（在助动词 must 之后）

They were ***both*** dead.

他们俩都去世了。（在 be 之后）

They ***both*** refused to go there.

他们俩都拒绝到那儿去。（在动词之前）

They have ***both*** finished work.

他们俩都完成了工作。（在助动词 have 之后）

11. dress 往往指女装，男装用 suit。但作为穿着打扮不分男女都用 dress. dress 还可用为服装的总称（不可数）

例　All the pretty women wore their smartest ***dresses.***

所有漂亮的妇女们都穿着最时髦的**女装**。（可数）

They like to wear their colourful national ***dress.***

他们爱穿色彩艳丽的民族**服装**。（不可数）

He doesn't care much about ***dress.***

他不怎么关心**穿着打扮**。（不可数）

【习题】

I 把括号内动词给予正确形式：

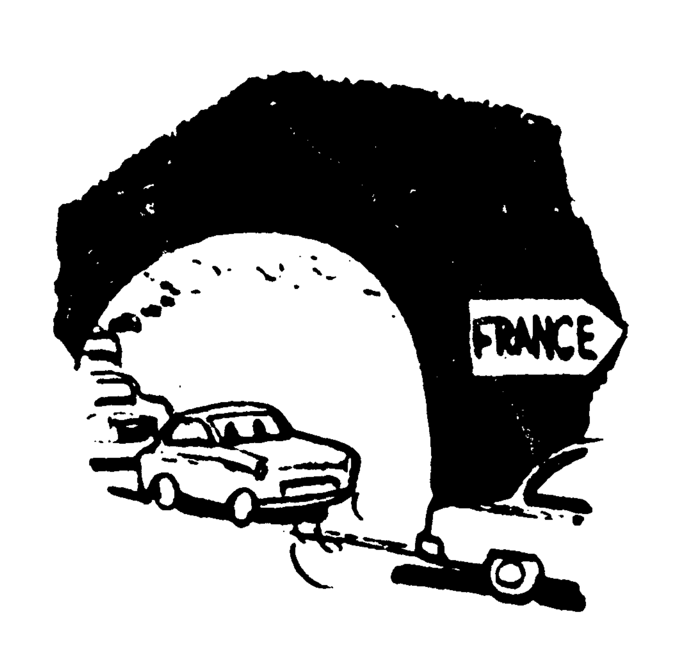
1. What would you do if you ________(win)a lot of money?
2. If you ________(lose) your way, you would have to ask a policeman.
3. If your father ________(be) present(在场), he would enjoy this.
4. If she ________(try), she can do better.
5. You ________(burn) your fingers if you play with matches.
6. If you broke the windows you ________(have to) pay for it.
7. I would be grateful(感激) if you ________(can) help me.
8. If I were you, I ________(not, be) so confident(自信).
9. If he ________(be) clever, he would not have any difficulty.
10. If you ________(not apologize(道歉)), he will never speak to you again.
11. If I ________(know) it I would tell it to you.
12. If it ________(be) so, it would be well.
13. You ________(may) go to the play, if you were older.
14. If I ________(try) I could enter the school.
15. I took my seat beside her. I ________(seat) next to her.
16. If I ________(not,hear) from him I'd write him another letter.
17. What ________(will) you do if you came home early?
18. You needn't come with us if you ________(not, want) to.
19. If you ________(go) to the exhibition you would enjoy it.
20. If you saw him now you ________(not, recognize(认出)) him.
21. If he ________(go) next week, would you go too?
22. Indeed, if there ________(be)anything to tell,I would tell it to you.
23. Would you mind very much if I ________(ask) you to do something?
24. If I ________(be) you, I'd go to night school tomorrow evening.
25. But if you ________(know) all the circumstances (情况) you'd forgive me.

43 *The Channel Tunnel**

英吉利海峡隧道

If, at the time, the British ***had*** not feared invasion, it ***would have*** been completed.

本课重点 虚拟过去,if 第三式(Ⅲ)



In 1858, a French engineer, Aime Thome de Gamond, arrived in England with a plan for a twenty-one mile tunnel across the English Channel. He said that it would be possible to build a platform in the centre of the Channel. This platform would serve as a port and a railway station.

在1858年,一位名叫艾梅·托梅·德·格蒙的法国工程师来到了英格兰,随身带着一份横穿英吉利海峡全长21英里的隧道规划。他说,在英吉利海峡的中央筑一个站台将是办得到的。这个站台将用作港口和铁路车站。

The tunnel ***would*** be well-ventilated ***if*** tall chimneys ***were***

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第64课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第120页。

built above sea-level. In 1860, a better plan was put forward by an Englishman, William Low. He ***suggested that*** a double railway tunnel ***should*** be built. This would solve the problem of ventilation, for ***if*** a train ***entered*** this tunnel, it ***would*** draw in fresh air behind it.

如果建造高大的烟囱伸出海平面的话，这条隧道的通风**将会是**良好的。在1860年，一个名叫威廉·罗的英国人提出了一项更好的计划。他**建议应该**建造有双轨铁道的隧道，这样，通风问题就会解决，因为，**假如**有一列火车进入该隧道，那末火车**就会**把火车后面的新鲜空气带进去。

Forty-two years later a tunnel was actually begun, ***If***, at the time, the British ***had*** not feared invasion, it ***would have*** been completed. Recently, there has again been great interest in the idea of a Channel Tunnel. If it ***is built***, it ***will*** connect Britain to Europe for the first time in history.

隧道实际上是在42年之后才真正动工的。**当时**，如果英国人**不曾害怕**入侵的话，隧道早就**建成过**了。近来，人们对开凿英吉利海峡隧道的想法又有了很大的兴趣。**只要**隧道一完工，它**就可以**在历史上首次把英国和欧洲连接起来。

【讲解】

1. 本课把if第一式，if第二式，if第三式（即：现在直陈式，一般虚拟及虚拟过去）都在课文中交叉展示：

   if第一式：***If*** it ***is*** built, it ***will*** connect Britain to Eruope...

   if第二式：...***if*** a train ***entered*** this tunnel, it ***would*** draw in fresh air behind it.

   The tunnel ***would*** be well-ventilated if tall chimneys ***were built*** above sea-level.

   if第三式：...***If*** , at the time, the British ***had*** not feared invasion, it ***would have*** been completed.

suggest: He ***suggested that*** a double railway tunnel (***should***) be built.

2. 虚拟过去的模式是：

if...had(hadn't)... { could have (couldn't have) / would have (wouldn't have) }

注意"not"的位置，不能用 would have not。

例 ***If*** you ***had*** told me about it earlier, I ***would have*** been able to help you.

如果你早些把情况告诉我，我也就有可能帮助你了。

例 If you (can, come) with us, we ***would have*** been pleased.

如果你有可能跟我们一起去的话(指昨天或前几天)，我们会很高兴的。

注意时态：can→could→

had been able to,
||
could have

= ***If*** you { ***could have*** come / ***had been able to*** come } with us, we ***would have*** been pleased.

3. 比较：

If you ***go*** to the exhibition, you ***will*** enjoy it.

只要你去看展览会，你**一定会**喜欢它的。(有把握)。

If you ***went*** to the exhibition, you ***would*** enjoy it.

假如你去看展览会的话，你会喜欢它的。(讲这句话的时候，可能对方正躺在医院的病床上，双腿不能走路。)

If you ***had*** gone to the exhibition, you ***would have*** enjoyed it . (本句也可为 Had you gone to...)

如果(前几天，上一周，上个月)你去看展览会的话，你就会对它有好感的。(可惜你**不曾**去看)

【语言材料】

1. in the centre of　在中央，在中心地段

2. serve as　用作
3. be put forward　被提出
4. draw in　带进、吸入
5. was begun　被开始动工
6. at the time　在当时
7. the British　英国人
8. there has again been　重新又有…
9. connect A to B　把 A 和 B 连接起来
10. for the first time　首次
11. suggest 的使用，一般也属于虚拟语气的一种。其模式是：

(1)suggest that…(should)…

可省略(用动词原形)
被动态(be 不可省略)

例 I ***suggest that*** we ***leave*** early for the airport.
我建议我们应该早一点到机场去。(省略 should)
He ***suggested that*** all the letters ***be posted.***
他建议所有信件应该发走。(省略 should)

(2) suggest＋ing(动名词)

例 He ***suggested that*** a double railway tunnel ***should*** be built.
＝He ***suggested building*** a double railway tunnel.

【习题】

Ⅰ. 把括号内动词给予正确形式

1. You ________(not, make) such a mistake if you had been more careful.
2. If I ________(be) in your position, I would have acted differently.
3. If you ________(can, make) him change his mind, you would have saved him a lot of trouble.

4. You mean to say that had he arrived you ________(go) to the station?

5. If they had come by train, they ________(get) here on time.

6. Even if he had spoken English slower you ________(cannot, understand) him.

7. I wouldn't have been able to pass the exam even if I ________(try) harder.

8. If she ________(can, hear) him, she would've laughed.

9. If she ________(have) enough money, she'd've bought the dress.

10. Had I ________(know) this was a test I ________(be) more careful.

Ⅱ. 选择填空

( ) 1. What ________ if you had been in my position ?

a. would have you done b. you have done
c. you would do d. would you have done

( ) 2. If they'd come home early, ________ in the garden.

a. they'd've played b. theyd've played
c. they'dve played d. they would have not played

( ) 3. If you don't hurry, you ________ the train.

a. would have missed b. could've missed
c. would miss d. will miss

( ) 4. They suggested ________ the meeting to an end.

a. that should bring b. bring
c. bringing d. to bring

( ) 5. If a train ________ this tunnel, it will draw in fresh air behind it.

a. entered b. had entered
c. enters d. enters into

( ) 6. ________ anything happened, he would have let her know.

a. If b. Even if
c. If there were d. Had

( ) 7. I think it would be much better if you ________.

a. had been there b. had understood it

c. had been given the money   d. got a job

( ) 8. Wouldn't it be better if you ________ to see him at the office?

a. make a telephone call   b. write him a letter

c. would have gone   d. made an appointment

( ) 9. If I ________, I should have talked to mother.

a. would think of it   b. had thought of it

c. really known it   d. had happened something

( )10. She did everything for me that my mother could have done if she ________.

a. lives   b. lived

c. had lived   d. had lived

44 *Trapped in a Mine**

身陷矿井

1. If they ***are*** not brought to the surface soon they ***may*** lose their lives.
   If explosives ***are*** used, vibrations ***will*** cause the roof of the mine to collapse.
2. If they ***knew*** how difficult it was to drill through the hard rock, they ***would*** lose heart.
3. If there ***had*** not been a hard layer of rock beneath the soil, they ***would have*** completed the job in a few hours.

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第88课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第164页。

本课重点 "if"三式集中展示(Ⅳ)

Six men have been trapped in a mine for seventeen hours. ***If*** they ***are*** not brought to the surface soon they ***may*** lose their lives. However, rescue operations are proving difficult. ***If*** explosives ***are*** used, vibrations ***will*** cause the roof of the mine to collapse.

六个人已经身陷矿井有17个小时了。**如果**他们不立即被带上地面他们**就有可能**丧生。然而,救援工作看来困难不小。**只要**一用炸药,震动**就会**使矿顶坍塌。

Rescue workers are therefore drilling a hole on the north side of the mine. They intend to bring the men up in a special capsule. ***If*** there ***had*** not been a hard layer of rock beneath the soil, they ***would have*** completed the job in a few hours. As it is, they have been drilling for sixteen hours and they still have a long way to go.

因此救援人员正在矿井北侧钻孔。他们打算用特别容器把他们提上来。如果土壤下面**不曾有**坚硬的岩层的话,他们**早就可以**在几小时之内完成这项工作了。事实上,他们一直钻了有16个小时了,然而他们仍然有许多问题有待解决。

Meanwhile, a microphone, which was lowered into the mine two hours ago, has enabled the men to keep in touch with the closest relatives. Though they are running out of food and drink, the men are cheerful and confident that they will get out soon. They have been told that rescue operations are progressing smoothly. ***If*** they ***knew*** how difficult it was to drill

through the hard rock, they ***would*** lose heart.

与此同时,两个小时前向矿井放下去的一只扩音器,已有效地使身陷矿井内的人们有可能同最亲近的亲属保持联系。虽然他们的食品和饮料快要吃完了,但这些人心情很愉快并且充满信心认为他们很快就会出来。他们已经获悉救援工作正在顺利进行中。要是他们**当时知道**钻通坚硬的岩石有多么困难的话,他们**也许会**失去信心的。(实际上他们当时并不知道)

【习题】

1. 本课集中展示 if 三式的写作要点及其特定情景。目前一般教材的缺点在于语言点比较分散,一篇课文出现许多问题,而且不集中展示,没有比较,使人印象不深。

   例如讲动名词,《新概念英语》短短一篇课文中,动名词的使用实例可以出现七八次之多,而一般教材却不具备这种特点,因此我们学《新概念英语》实在能取得事半功倍之效果。尤其像本课 if 三式的集中展示,(伴有特定情景)在任何其他教科书上都是难以找到的。

2. 注意下列表达

   If there ***had not been***
   If there ***weren't*** (***wasn't***)
   If there ***isn't***
   } 意思都为"要是没有",只是时态不同而已。

3. 虚拟过去的句型不是一成不变的,不都是 had…would have,如果说"我**如果刚才**带了一顶雨伞的话,**现在也不会**在雨里走了。"我们要注意"刚才","现在",不能一概都用 had…wouldn't have 句型。

   例 If I ***had*** brought an embrella with me, I ***wouldn't have walked*** in the rain ***now***. (误)

   应:If I ***had*** brought an embrella with me, I ***wouldn't be walking*** in the rain ***now***.

   (wouldn't be+ing=不会,不至于)

这叫做错综条件句，我们仅在这里说一下，只要能看懂就行了。

【语言材料】

1. be trapped in　被困在…
2. be proving　看来是…
3. cause...to　使…引发…
4. intend to　打算
5. bring...up　把…提上来
6. layer of rock　岩层
7. as it is　事实上
8. have a long way to go　还有不少问题有待解决
9. enable *sb.* to　使某某人有可能…
10. keep in touch with　与…保持联系
11. run out of　用尽，耗尽
12. be confident that　深信…
13. get out　出来
14. progress smoothly　进展顺利
15. drill through　钻过，钻通
16. lose heart　失去信心，灰心丧气

lose heart 与 lose one's heart 不同。比较下列例句：

① No matter how difficult it is, we must never ***lose heart.***

不论有多么困难，我们决不能灰心丧气。

②She ***lost her heart to*** the young man.

她爱上了那个年青人。(注意有 her)

【习题】

Ⅰ. 选择填空

( ) 1. ________ they are brought to the surface they may lose their lives.

a. Whether　　b. Unless

c. Without　　d. Except

( ) 2. It's proving difficult ________ the men.

a. in rescuing　　b. for rescuing

c. to rescuing　　d. to rescue

( ) 3. They had a lot of difficulty ________ the men.

a. in rescuing　　b. to rescue

c. for rescuing　　d. by rescuing

( ) 4. Vibrations will cause the roof of the mine to collapse. They will ________ collapse.

a. make it　　b. make it to

c. cause it　　d. enable it

( ) 5. They would have completed the job in a few hours ________ the hard layer of rock.

a. unless　　b. if not

c. except　　d. but for

( ) 6. The microphone enabled them to keep in touch. It made it ________ for them to keep in touch.

a. possible　　b. capable

c. probable　　d. able

( ) 7. They may lose heart. They may ________.

a. in despair　　b. give up it

c. give off　　d. give up in despair 绝望

Ⅱ. 动词变形，给予正确形式

8. If he had fitted safety belt(安全带)to his car he ________(not injure 受伤)

9. The man would ________(save) if a helocopter (直升飞机) had been available(找到).

10. If you come home late, you ________(find) the key under the apple tree near the door.

11. I would have found the house easily had ________(he, give) me the correct address.
12. If smoking ________(forbid 禁止) illness will be reduced(减少).
13. While driving to work yesterday, I ________(run) out of petrol(汽油) and had to walk to a garage.
14. If the doctor had been available(可请到), the child ________(not, die)
15. He wouldn't have failed so badly if he ________(work) harder.
16. I'd go with him if he ________(ask) me to go with him.
17. What caused him ________(change) his mind?
18. This train will enable me ________(get) there in time.
19. I might have done it if I ________(be) stronger.
20. If that is the case(既是这样), I ________(go).

45 *Expensive and Uncomfortable*

既费钱又不舒服

> No one could ***account for*** the fact that one of the boxes was extremely heavy.

本课重点 动词+介词专论

When a plane from London ***arrived at*** Sydney airport, workers began to unload a number of wooden boxes which contained

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第46课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第88页。

clothing. No one could ***account for*** the fact that one of the boxes was extremely heavy.
当来自伦敦的一架飞机抵达悉尼机场时，工人们开始卸下装有服装的一些木箱子。谁也无法解释为什么其中的一只箱子特别沉重。

It suddenly ***occurred to*** one of the workers to open up the box. He was astonished at what he found. A man was ***lying in*** the box ***on*** top of a pile of woollen goods. He was so surprised at being discovered that he did not even try to run away.
其中有一个工人突然想起来要把箱子打开。他看见的情况使他感到惊讶。有一个人正躺在箱子里，躺在一堆毛织品的上端。他被人发现时感到非常吃惊，所以他甚至都不想逃跑。

After he was arrested, the man admitted hiding in the box before the plane left London. He had had a long and uncomfortable trip, for he had ***been confined to*** the wooden box for over ten hours. The man was ordered to ***pay*** £345 ***for*** the cost of the trip. The normal price of a ticket is £230.
他被抓走以后，这个人承认在飞机离开伦敦之前就躲藏在箱子里。他已经度过了一次漫长而又不舒服的旅行，因为他一直被关在木箱里有十多个小时了。此人被勒令交付345英磅作为这次旅行的费用。一张飞机票的正常票价是230英磅！

【讲解】

动词＋介词是短语动词的一种形式。这是非常活跃用处极大的语言材料。要学会这些表达，除了下功夫记忆和练习之外，可以说没

有什么“速成法”可言。那些动不动讲英语“速成法”的人，自己都不知道在讲些什么，他讲不出什么“法”，他所知道的不过是人人皆知的东西，本来就用不到他来讲，因为根本不存在“速成法”。短语动词多达1，4000个，怎样“速成”法？

动词＋介词的词组数量极大，不可能一一列举。只能列举其常用的一部分，本人编译的《英语惯用语选萃》一书，是一本常用动词＋介词的集大成之作，原作者为[美]R. J. 逖克逊。

我们将在习题部分选编《新概念英语》中常用词组进行练习（附汉语译文），这样，可以增加你的词组量及理解能力。

【语言材料】

1. arrive at　到达
2. a number of　一些
3. account for　解释清楚，说清
4. it occurred to *sb*　使某人突然想起，to 是介词
5. open up　打开，up 是副词
6. be astonished at　对…感到惊讶
7. lie in　躺在…里面
8. a pile of　一堆
9. on top of　在…上端
10. be surprised at　对…感到吃惊
11. try to　想，试图
12. admit＋动名词　承认…
13. have a trip　旅行

    本课为：He had ***had a*** long and uncomfortable ***trip***

    （had ***had***：组成完成时态；long and uncomfortable：外加的形容词）
14. be confined to（被禁闭在，关在…）to 是介词
15. be ordered to（被勒令）to 是不定式
16. pay＋钱＋for　为…付款多少多少
17. the cost of　…之费用

【习题】

根据下列汉语译文填入适当介词，介词分别为下列8种：

to	at	for	with	in	of	from	on

1. Do you object ________ my smoking?
   你反对我抽烟吗？
2. How do you account ________ this?
   对这件事你作何解释？
3. She preferred ________ wait ________ him.
   她宁愿等他。
4. You must reply ________ his letter.
   你必须回他的信。
5. He has some important business to attend ________.
   他有一些重要的事要办。
6. Do you mean to say you exchanged that lovely car ________ this?
   你的意思是说你把那辆漂亮的汽车换取这个东西吗？
7. Has it occurred ________ you that she must have arrived ________ London Airport by now?
   你有没有想起过她现在谅必到过伦敦机场了？
8. I was shocked ________ his indifference!
   对于他的冷漠我感到震惊！
9. You must comply ________ the rules of the game.
   你必须遵守比赛规则。
10. Poor Mary! She has so much to cope ________!
    可怜的玛丽！她有这么多的事要去应付！
11. Please don't mention it ________ my husband, but I paid £10. ________ this hat.
    请不要把这件事向我的丈夫提及，不过我付了10英磅买了这顶帽子。
12. It is rude to stare ________ people.
    盯着人看是不礼貌的。

13. Don't blame me ________ the accident!

出事故可不能怪我!

14. I'm not satisfied ________ your work.

你的工作我感到并不满意。

15. His debt now amounts ________ 100 dollars.

他的欠债现在总计达到一百美元。

16. ________ whom does this book belong?

这本书是(属于)谁的?

17. I reasoned ________ him but he wouldn't listen ________ me.

我同他讲道理但是他就是不愿意听我说。

18. She is accustomed ________ living in comfort.

她习惯于过舒适的生活。

19. At what time will you call ________ me?

几点钟你来叫我呀?

20. I'll see ________ the cooking tonight.

今晚我来照料烧饭做菜的事。

21. I must apologizing ________ keeping you waiting.

我必须向你道歉,让你久等了。

22. The class failed to respond ________ the teacher's new methods.

全班学生没能对老师的新教学法作出反应。

23. He turned ________ me for help, even after I had quarrelled ________ him.

他求我帮助,即使我同他争吵过之后。

24. Please apply ________ the secretary for information.

请向秘书询问情况。

25. There was a note attached ________ the parcel.

包裹上附有一张便条。

26. Just guess ________ the price of this carpet.

猜猜这条地毯的价格吧。

27. How long have you been working ________ this exercise?

这道练习题你做了有多长时间啦?

28. The concert began ________ a piece by an unknown composer.

音乐会是以一位不知名的作曲家所作的一首乐曲开始的。

29. How much did they charge you ________ that?
买那件东西他们向你要价多少钱?

30. She'll never part ________ her precious possessions.
她永远不会把她的宝贵财产送给人家。

31. I drew a lot of money ________ the bank yesterday.
昨天我在银行里支取一大笔钱。

32. I refuse to comment ________ his work.
我不愿评论他的工作,无可奉告。

33. The waiter's tip is included ________ the bill.
账单内已包括招待员的小费。

34. He congratulated me ________ having got engaged.
他向我祝贺订婚之喜。

35. This warm coat will protect you ________ cold.
这件暖和的外衣可以使你御寒。

36. I suppose I can count ________ you for help ________ this matter.
我料想在这件事上我可以指望你帮我一把。

37. You can never rely ________ him to be punctual.
你永远不能指望他按时。

38. Nothing will prevent him ________ succeeding.
什么都不能阻止他成功。

39. Beware ________ pickpockets!
注意小偷摸窃!

40. He persisted ________ asking a lot of questions.
他坚持问许多问题。

41. I insist ________ your telling me the truth.
我坚持(一定)要你对我讲真话。

42. I seperated them ________ each other because they were fighting.
因为他们在打架所以我把他们俩拉开。

43. If they operate ________ him, they can only cure him ________ his illness.
只有他们给他做手术,他们才能把他的病治好。

44. You can depend ________ me.
你可以信赖我。
45. I haven't accused him ________ such a thing.
我并没有为这么一件事而指责(控)他。
46. I suspect him ________ having taken it.
我疑心他把那件东西拿走了。
47. We expect a great deal ________ you, Smith.
我们对你抱有极大的希望,史密斯。
48. My hands smell ________ soap.
我的手有肥皂味。
49. They differ ________ each other so much.
他们之间意见相去甚远。
50. He invested a lot of money ________ shipping.
他在海运事业上投资很多。
51. The film was based ________ a novel by Dickens.
这部电影是根据狄更斯的一部小说为脚本的。
52. She often suffers ________ colds.
她经常患感冒。
53. We have embarked ________ a new scheme.
我们已开始从事一项新的计划。
54. I believe ________ taking my time.
我主张从容从事。
55. Jones was dismissed ________ the firm.
琼斯被这家公司解雇了(除名)。
56. They began by experimenting ________ rats.
他们的实验是在老鼠身上做实验开始的。
57. Please concentrate ________ what you are doing.
请把思想集中在你所在做的工作上。
58. She prides herself ________ her clean house.
她以她的一尘不染的房子而引为骄傲。
59. The climber failed ________ his attempt to reach the summit.
爬山运动员未能设法到达顶峰。

60. We must economize ________ fuel.

我们必须节约使用燃料。

61. He's never done any work. He lives ________ his mother.

他从来没有干过什么工作。他靠他的母亲生活。

62. He was employed ________ a factory before he joined the army.

在他参军之前他受雇于一家工厂。

63. And what does this delightful drink consist ________?

那末这种令人心旷神怡的饮料是由什么成份组成的?

64. I shall certainly act ________ your advice.

当然我将按照你的意见行事。

65. You shouldn't boast ________ your success.

你不该吹嘘你的成功。

66. I was instructed ________ drawing once upon a time.

过去有人教我作画。

67. Two or three people were involved ________ the accident.

这次意外事故有两至三人与此有关。

68. Children should be prohibited ________ smoking.

孩子们应严禁吸烟。

69. It is unreasonable to demand this ________ him.

向他提出这种要求是不合理的。

70. I can assure you ________ my support.

我可以向你担保我会支持你的。

71. Do you approve ________ hunting?

你赞成打猎吗?

72. He performs beautifully ________ the piano.

他钢琴弹得美极了。

73. I warned him ________ the danger.

我警告他有危险。

74. Everyone shared ________ his happiness.

人人都分享他的幸福。

75. He delights ________ annoying me.

他老爱打搅我。

46 *Red for Danger*

红帽惹祸

...but the drunk ***was unaware of*** the danger.

本课重点　形容词+介词专论

During a bullfight, a drunk suddenly wandered into the middle of the ring. The crowd began to shout, but the drunk ***was unaware of*** the danger. The bull ***was busy with*** the matador at the time, but it suddenly caught sight of the drunk who was shouting rude remarks and waving a red cap.

在一次斗牛过程中,一个醉汉突然踉踉跄跄走进到斗牛圈的中央。观众开始叫喊起来,但这醉汉并不意识到有危险。当时公牛只顾与斗牛士搏斗,但它突然瞥见了那个醉汉,他正满嘴粗话向公牛嚷嚷而且还挥动着一顶红帽子。

Apparently ***sensitive to*** criticism, the bull forgot all about the

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第70课。

参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第171页。

matador and charged at the drunk. The crowd suddenly grew quiet. The drunk, however, ***seemed*** quite ***sure of*** himself. When the bull ***got close to*** him, he clumsily stepped aside to let it pass. The crowd broke into cheers and the drunk bowed.
公牛对那些粗话的非难显然很敏感，所以它把斗牛士忘得一干二净转而向醉汉冲去。突然观众变得鸦雀无声。可是这个醉汉似乎相当自信。当公牛冲过去快靠近他时，他笨拙地往旁边一闪让公牛过去了。观众爆发出一阵欢呼，而这个醉汉则鞠躬表示谢意。

By this time, however, three men had come into the ring and they quickly dragged the drunk to safety. Even the bull seemed to feel ***sorry for*** him, for it looked on sympathetically until the drunk was out of the way ***before*** once more turning its attention to the matador.
不过，在这之前，有三个人早已进入斗牛圈，他们很快把醉汉拖到安全的地方。甚至连公牛似乎都为他感到难过，因为公牛深表同情地在一旁看着，一直到醉汉走到一边去之后这才再次把注意力转向斗牛士。(注意 ***before*** 的使用，参阅后面解释)

【讲解】

1. 在普通的词典中一般查不到专论形容词＋介词的条目。不像动词＋介词，可以查阅短语动词词典。所以要随时留意形容词词组并予以记忆。最近苏州大学编写了一本《英语搭配大辞典》，为这方面做了一件有益的工作，这是中国出版界的一件大事。
2. 本课展示的只是：be unaware of, be busy with, be sensitive to, be sure of, be(get) close to, feel sorry for 等，我们将在习题中再列举更多的形容词词组作为练习，并有汉语注解，以帮助扩大词组的积累。

【语言材料】

1. wander into　摇摇晃晃走进
2. be unaware of　并没有意识到

3. be busy with　忙于对付，只顾

4. at the time　在当时

5. catch sight of　瞥见

6. rude remarks　粗鲁的话语

7. be sensitive to　对…敏感

be sensitive to criticitsm　是一种习惯搭配。

例　A writer mustn't be too senitive to criticism.

一个作家不要对非难过于敏感。

8. forget all about　把…全忘了，忘得一干二净

9. charge at　冲向

10. grow quiet　变得安静下来

11. be sure of oneself　很自信，有把握

12. get close to　靠近，接近(close 是形容词)

13. step aside　向边上一闪(一站)

14. break into cheers　爆发出欢呼声

15. by this time　在此之前

16. drag *ab* to safety　把某人拉到安全地方

17. feel sorry for　为…感到难过

18. look on　在一旁看着，旁观

19. be out of way　到一边去

20. once more　再次

21. turn one's attention to　把某人的注意力转向…

注意　before 可以译为："之后才"，不一定非要译为"之前"

例　It was a long time ***before*** I got to sleep again.

过了很长时间**之后**我**才**重新入睡。

It will be ten years ***before*** we meet again.

十年**之后**我们**才**能再见面。

He had to be called three or four times ***before*** he would come to his dinner.

他非得要叫上三四次之后才会来吃他的中饭。

【习题】

1．用下列8种介词填空，构成形容词词组：

for	with	of	to	at	from	on	about

1. They found him guilty ________ murder.
   人们发现他犯有谋杀罪。
2. The twins are quite different ________ each other in many ways.
   这对双胞胎在各方面都不尽相同。
3. He is completely dependent ________ her. He gets used ________ living on her.
   他完全依靠她。她习惯于靠她生活。
4. He was very rude ________ me.
   他对我很不礼貌。
5. I'm grateful ________ you for being so patient ________ him.
   你对他如此耐心，我很感激。
6. He is not really equal ________ the task.
   他事实上不能胜任这项任务。
7. Don't be so sure ________ yourself!
   你不要这样自信！
8. I was afraid ________ mentioning it to him.
   我就是害怕向他提及这件事。
9. I'm responsible ________ what has happened.
   我对所发生的事负责。
10. He is so keen ________ learning.
    他对学习如此渴望。
11. They appear to be enthusiastic ________ your success.
    他们对你的成功显得很热情。
12. I was shocked ________ his refusal.
    他的拒绝使我深感震惊。
13. Are you aware ________ the difficulties?

你意识到种种困难吗?

14. This car is inferior ________ the one I bought last year.

这辆汽车比我去年买的那一辆要差。

15. No. I think this car is superior ________ the one you bought last year.

不。我认为这辆汽车比你去年买的那一辆要强。

16. She isn't capable ________ bringing up children.

她没有能力把孩子拉扯大。

17. She is ignorant ________ the basic facts.

她对基本事实都弄不清楚。

18. She wanted to borrow the record from him but she was shy ________ asking.

她想向他借唱片,可是她羞于启齿。

19. They do not appear to be expert ________ holding their breath.

他们屏住呼吸(游泳)似乎并不显得很在行。

20. George is jealous ________ his younger sister.

乔治嫉妒他的妹妹。

21. She is well-qualified ________ typing and very effecient ________ her work.

她的打字可说是很够格的,工作上效率也很高。

22. We are fortunate ________ having sufficient supplies of fuel for the winter.

我们很幸运有足够的供过冬的燃料。

23. Contrary ________ my expectations, there was no need to be uneasy ________ the results of the match.

(结果)跟我的预料相反,我们无需对比赛的结果感到心神不安。

24. I'm not familiar ________ his novels.

我对他的几部小说都不熟悉。

25. His novels are not familiar ________ me.

他的几部小说对我来说都不熟悉。

26. I know he is slow ________ understanding.

我知道他的反应不快,不能很快理解。

27. It is obvious ________ everyone that he is not responsible ________ this mistake.

人人都明白他对这次错误没有责任。

28. I think he is quite honest ________ his intentions.

我认为他的意图是相当诚恳的。

29. He used to be indifferent ________ other people, but he isn't any more now.

他过去对别人漠不关心,但现在不再这样了。

30. I'm not very fond ________ dancing.

我不是很喜欢跳舞。

31. He is intent ________ passing the examination, but I'm doubtful ________ his chances.

他一心一意要通过考试,但我对他的成功可能性表示怀疑。

32. You needn't get angry ________ him.

你不必对他生气。

33. I've never been good ________ arithmetic.

我从来不善于算术。

34. That boy is far ahead ________ everyone else in the class.

那男孩在班上比谁都学业优良,远超在别人前头。

35. Even though Mike was often curel ________ his dog, it remained faithful ________ him.

即使迈克常常对他的狗很凶狠,这条狗还是对他很忠诚。

36. Your conclusions are not consistent ________ the facts.

你的结论同事实不相符(不一致)。

37. This diary will prove useful ________ you.

这本日记将证明对你有用处。

38. I'm not sure ________ the exact date, but I think he arrived here in 1980.

确切的日期我没有把握(说),但是我想他是在1980年到这里来的。

39. This passport is valid ________ all countries except China.

这张护照对于各国来说都有效,除了中国不行。

40. He may be quick ________ understanding, but he is not capable of remembering anything.

也许他敏于理解,但他不能记住任何事情。

41. Is she very popular ________ the workers?

她很受工人欢迎吗?

42. He is eager ________ knowledge.

他渴望得到知识。

43. She seems to be short ________ sleep.

她好像睡眠不足。

44. My opinions are similar ________ his.

我的看法和他的相似。

45. Don't be too curious ________ things you are not supposed to know.

你不该知道的事不要多打听。(be not supposed to=不该)

Ⅱ. 阅读下列短文,把最后一段话作选择填空:

A Witty Answer

机智的回答

An old man died and left his son a lot of money. But the son was a foolish young man, and he quickly spent all the money, so that soon he had nothing left. Of course, when that happened, all his friends left him. When he was quite poor and alone, he went to see Nasreddin, who was a kind, clever old man and often helped people when they had troubles.

"My money had findished and my friends have gone," said the young man. "What will happen to me now?"

"Don't worry, young man," ansewered Nasreddin. "Everything will soon be all right again. Wait, and you will soon feel much happier. "

The young man was very glad. "Am I going to get rich again then?" he asked Nasreddin.

---

* 选自 L. A. Hill, Intermediate Stories for Reproduction, Oxford University Press, 1983.

"No, I didn't mean that," said the old man. "I meant that you would soon get used to ________ (poor) and to ________ (have) no friends.

a. be poor...have　　b. become poor...have

c. becoming poor...have　　d. being poor...having

最后一般话的译文是："不，我刚才说的不是那个意思，"这位老人说。"我所说的意思是你会很快习惯于穷困和习惯于一个朋友也没有的。"(参看本课习题 I．3)

47 *Sticky Fingers**

粘糊糊的手指

At last I hung up ***the*** receiver. What ***a*** mess!

本课重点　冠词 the，a(an)概说

After breakfast, I ***sent the*** children ***to school*** and then I ***went to market***. It was still early when I returned home. ***The*** children were ***at school***, my husband was ***at work*** and

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第54课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第103页。

the house was quiet. So I decided to make some tarts for tea.
吃过早餐后,我送孩子们去上学,然后到市场买东西。当我回家时时间还早,孩子们在上学,我的丈夫在上班,家里很安静。于是我决定做几个小烘饼作茶点。

In ***a*** short time I was busy mixing ***butter*** and ***flour*** and my hands were soon covered with sticky pastry. At exactly that moment, ***the*** telephone rang. Nothing could have been more annoying. I picked up ***the*** receiver between two sticky fingers and was dismayed when I recognized ***the*** voice of Mrs Bates. It took me ten minutes to persuade her to ring back later.
不一会我就忙着调拌黄油和面粉,我的手则很快沾满了粘糊糊的面粉糊。正在那时,电话铃响了。再没有比这更使人讨厌的了。我用两只粘糊糊的手指把话筒夹了起来。当我听出那是蓓茨太太的声音时,我感到惶惶不安。我花了十分钟时间才说服她过后再打电话来。

At last I hung up ***the*** receiver. What ***a*** mess! There was pastry on my fingers, on ***the*** telephone, and on ***the*** door-knobs. I had no sooner got back to ***the*** kitchen than ***the*** door-bell rang loud enough to wake ***the dead***. This time it was ***the*** postman and he wamted me to sign for ***a*** registered letter!
最后,我把听筒挂上。真是糟糕透了!我手指上,电话机上,门把上全是面糊。我刚回到厨房,门铃就响起来了,声音响得可厉害啦。这次原来是邮递员来了,他要我签字领一封挂号信。

【讲解】

1. breakfast 前不用冠词,dinner, supper 都不用.
2. sent...to school:把什么人送去上学,不说 to the school。go to work 去上班,不说 go to the work.
3. be at school, 在上学(状态);be at work 在工作,上班(状态)
4. go to market,去市场买东西,赶集;go to the market 到市场去

5. butter，flour 前都不用不定冠词 a
6. what a mess，也可说 what a mess I am in！我的处境是够乱七八糟的(不可收拾)。有冠词 a
7. the dead，the＋形容词结构，泛指死人，the rich，the sick，the poor，分别泛指富人，病人，穷人等。

【语言材料】

1. decide to　决定
2. be covered with　满是
3. at exactly that time　正在那时
4. nothing could have been more ＋ 形容词　没有比这更
5. pick up　抓起
6. be dismayed　感到惶惶不安
7. persuade *sb* to　把人说服去干什么什么事
8. ring back　打回电话
9. hang up　挂上
10. what a mess　真是太糟了，乱七八糟
11. had no sooner…than　刚…就
12. got back to　回到
13. loud enough to wake the dead　声音响得够厉害的
14. this time　这回，这次
15. sign for　签字领取

【习题】

I. 用适当冠词或不用冠词：

1. He was very poor years ago, but now he is ________ rich man.
2. There are many organizations(组织) to help ________ deaf(聋) and ________ blind(瞎).
3. ________ school in our village was built last year.
4. Many children went to ________ school early this morning.

5. The farmer goes to ________ market(去赶集) on Saturdays.
6. We often go to ________ cinema and ________ theatre.
7. It is ________ most interesting exhibition I have ever seen.
8. It is ________ biggest shop in London.
9. "Did you do any work yesterday?"
"Yes, I did some work before ________ breakfast."
10. For ________ whole week I did not smoke at all.
11. He has ________ bad temper(脾气坏) and ________ enormous appetite(胃口大).
12. It is ________ easiest thing to give up smoking.
13. I'm afraid of ________ thunder(雷) and ________ lightning(闪电).
14. Would you like ________ apple or ________ orange?
15. Are you ________ artist or ________ musician?
16. Do you take(放) ________ sugar in your tea?
17. I spent ________ evening listening to some music.
18. He kept on(不断) making ________ same mistake.
19. He has just begun ________ diary(日记). I wonder how long he will keep it up(保持下去).
20. He gave me ________ packet(包) of ________ sweets(糖果).
21. ________ breakfast is the first meal of the day.
22. She returned home. She is at ________ home all morning.
23. Nothing could have been more annoying. It was ________ most annoying.
24. Was she busy mixing ________ butter and ________ flour?
25. "Coffee isn't expensive."
"No, but ________ coffee I bought this morning was very expensive."
26. Where did he go on ________ New Year's Eve(除夕)?
27. The big clock stopped, it refused to welcome ________ New Year.
28. There are many islands in ________ Pacific Ocean.
29. He began to talk to us about ________ French language.

30. This ruler(尺) is just ________ thing for me(正合我需要).

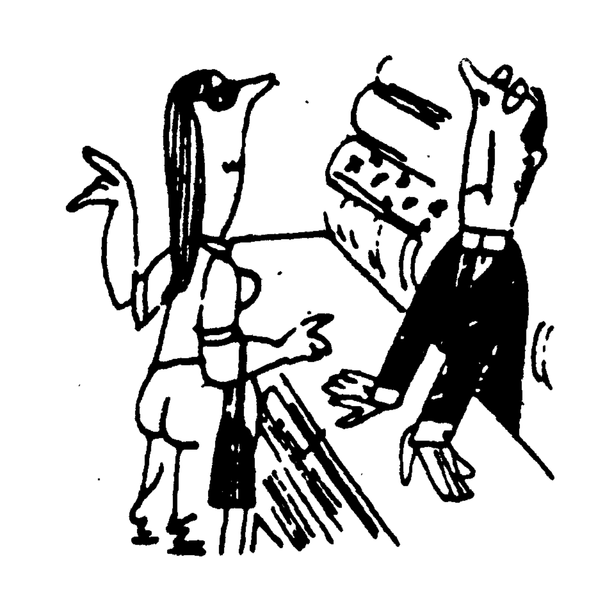
48 *Can I Help You Madam?**

你想买些什么，太太？

> ***Glancing*** at her scornfully, ***he*** told her that the dress was sold.
> ***After seeking out*** the rude assistant, ***she*** asked for the same dress.

本课重点 现在分词 / 介词＋动名词 } 引导的状语（I）

A woman in blue jeans stood at the window of an expensive shop. Though she hesitated for a moment, she finally went in and asked to see a dress that was in the window. The assistant who served her did not like the way she was dressed.



一个穿蓝色牛仔裤的妇女站在一家高级商店的橱窗前。她尽管犹豫

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第57课.
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第109页。

了一会，但最后还是进商店并且要看一件陈列在橱窗里的衣服。接待她的那个营业员不喜欢她那种穿着的方式。

Glancing at her scornfully, ***he*** told her that the dress was sold. The woman walked out of the shop angrily and decided to punish the assistant next day. She returned to the shop the following morning dressed in a fur coat, with a handbag in one hand and a long umbrella in the other. ***After seeking out*** the rude assistant ***she*** asked for the same dress.

轻蔑地朝她瞟了一眼，他告诉她说那件衣服被人买走了。这个妇女气愤地走出商店决定第二天要这个营业员好看。次日上午她又回到商店，身穿一件毛皮大衣，一手拎着一只手提包，一手拿着一把长柄伞。在找出那个粗鲁无礼的营业员之后，她要买原来的那件衣服。

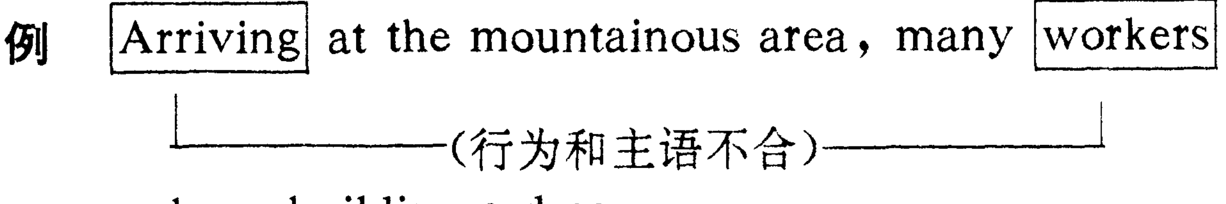
Not realizing who she was, ***the assistant*** was eager to serve her this time. ***With great difficulty***, ***he*** climbed into the shop window to get the dress. As soon as she saw it, the woman said she did not like it. She enjoyed herself making the assistant bring almost everything in the window before finally buying the dress she had first asked for.

由于不了解她是谁，这个营业员这回急切地为她服务。他费了好大的劲爬进商店的橱窗去取那件衣服。她一看那件衣服，就说她不喜欢它。她就是喜欢叫这个营业员把橱窗里几乎什么都取出来**之后这才**最后买下她开始要买的那件衣服。(before 的使用见四十六课 Ⅱ 解释)

【讲解】

1. 现在分词引导的状语必须与其逻辑主语相吻合，否则就是错句。

例 Arriving at the mountainous area, many workers



were busy building a dam.

到达山区时，有许多工人正忙着建筑堤坝。

→应：***Arriving*** at the mountainous area, ***we*** found many workers busy building a dam.

谁到达山区?是工人,还是我们?一对比你就清楚了。

2. 现在分词引导的状语,其否定式是:

(without) not + 现在分词,不是现在分词 + not(without)

例 ***Not knowing*** how to do it, he asked me for help.

由于不知道如何去做,他要我帮助他。

Not having received an answer, I wrote again,

由于没有收到回信,我又写信去了。

3. 介词+动名词引导的状语,也必须与主语相吻合,否则也是错句。

例 [After working] for three hours or so, [the work] was finished. (误)

干了三个小时左右之后,这项工作完成了。

(工作自己不能干,谁干的呢?当然是人。)

→应：***After working*** for three hours or so ***they*** finished the work. (或 they stopped to take a rest)

4. 现在分词引导的状语还可以用 Having 起句。

例 ***Having*** nothing else to do, ***he*** decided to go to the cinema.

因为无所事事,他决定去看电影。(having 作"有"解)

例 ***Having realized*** what it was all about, ***he*** began to feel dismayed.

由于**理解了**这件事的全部内容,他开始感到惶惶不安。

(having 是组成完成时态的分词)

例 ***Having been*** questioned three times, ***she*** felt frightened.

被盘问了三次之后,她感到惊恐万状。(having been 组成被动态)

5. Being 放在句首引导状语,一就是 being+形容词,一就是 being =“作为”解。

例 [Being] a bit [tired] she didn't want to go out.

因为有点累，所以她不想出去。

[Being] educators and teachers, they themselves must first be educated.

作为授业者和教师，他们自己必须首先要受教育。

【语言材料】

1. in blue jeans　in＝穿
2. for a moment　一会儿功夫
3. the way　方式
4. be dressed　穿着
5. glance at　一瞟
6. decide to　决定
7. return to　返回
8. the following morning　次日上午
9. seek out　找出
10. be eager to　急切地…
11. with great difficulty　(用作状语)费了很大的劲
12. climb into　爬进
13. ask for　要买

    例 He asked for a refrigerator by name.

    他指名要买某种牌子的电冰箱。

14. enjoy　后跟动名词(making)

★ the way she was dressed. ＝the way (in which) she was dressed.

例 I did not like the way he eyed me.

我不喜欢他看我的那种样子。

＝I did not like the way in which he eyed me.

the way 后面常接定语从句。

【习题】

Ⅰ. 选择填空:

( ) 1. After ________ out the rude assistant she asked for the same dress.

a. she was seeking. b. she seeking

c. she had sought d. sought

( ) 2. ________ who she was, the asistant was eager to serve her this time.

a. Not to realize b. Without to realize

c. Not realized d. Without realizing

( ) 3. On ________ it, the woman said she did not like it.

a. seeing b. she saw

c. she had seen d. looked at

( ) 4. ________, she saw a little girl running towards her.

a. Having walking out of the shop.

b. Looking back

c. Looked back

d. On wallked out of the room

( ) 5. Going back to bed, ________.

a. the light was still on

b. a loud noise was heard.

c. it began to rain

d. he suddenly felt dizzy(晕)

( ) 6. ________ this way, she reduced waste(降低废品) to six times less than that of last month.

a. Being b. Worked

c. Having worked for d. Working

( ) 7. ________ her way and ________ where to go, the old woman met a PLA man.

a. losing…knowing not b. lossing…without knowing

c. losting…not knowing D. losing…not knowing

( ) 8. After ________ the windows they went out.

a. they having closed　　b. closing

c. being closed　　d. having been closed

( ) 9. ________ along the street, I met a friend of mine.

a. While I walking　　b. While walking

c. Walked　　d. Having walking

( )10. ________ much English, he got out his dictionary and looked up the word "panda".

a. Being not know

b. Being not knowing

c. Without realizing

d. Not knowing

49 *The End of a Dream**

黄粱美梦

Tired of sleeping on the floor, ***a young man*** in Teheran saved up for years to buy a real bed.

本课重点　过去分词引导的状语，辨别过去分词的两种性质(Ⅱ)

Tired of sleeping on the floor , ***a young man*** in Teheran saved up for years to buy a real bed. For the first time in his

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第49课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第93页。

life, he became the proud owner of a bed which had springs and a mattress.

睡厌了地板,德黑兰的一位年青人积蓄了多年买了一张名符其实的床。他有生以来还是第一次成为值得骄傲的拥有一张有弹簧的床和一张床垫的主人。

Because the weather was very hot, he carried the bed on to the roof of his house. He slept very well for the first two nights, but on the third night, a storm blew up. A gust of wind swept the bed off the roof and sent it crashing into the courtyard below. The young man did not wake up until the bed had struck the ground. Although the bed was smashed to pieces, the man was miraculously unhurt.

由于天气很热,他把床扛到屋顶上去。头两天晚上,他睡得很香。但是在第三天晚上,一场暴风刮了起来。一阵狂风把床从屋顶上吹了下来,哗啦一声把它撞落在下面的庭院里。直到这张床撞到地上那年青人才醒过来。虽然床被砸得粉碎,可是这个人却奇迹般地没有受伤。

When he woke up, he was still on the mattress. ***Glancing at*** the bits of wood and metal that lay around him, ***the man*** sadly picked up the mattress and carried it into his house. After he had put it on the floor, he promptly went to sleep again.

当他醒来时,他仍然睡在床垫上。瞟了一眼散落在他周围的碎木块和碎金属块后,这个人哀声叹气地检起了床垫并把它扛进屋子里去。在他把床垫放在地板上之后,他又立即睡着了。

【讲解】

1. 当过去分词引导的状语出现在你的眼前时,你马上要想到这一过

去分词一定在下列两种情况下出现：

1)过去分词→一定是系表结构。

Tired of sleeping on the floor,...

=be tired of

2)过去分词→一定是被动语态。

seen from the hill, ***the park*** looks very beautiful.

从山上看，这个公园看来很美丽。

=If the park ***is seen*** from the hill, it looks very beautiful.

2. 注意下列分词状语中的过去分词是"被动"还是"系表"：

① ***Destroyed***(被毁) during the war, ***the city*** has now been completely rebuilt.

由于在战争期间被彻底摧毁，这座城市现在已整个被重建起来了。(Destroyed=As it was destroyed, 被动)

② ***Influenced*** by Xiao Liu, ***she*** began to participate in revoutionary activities.

由于受小刘的影响，她开始参与革命活动。

(Influenced, 被动)

3. ***Pleased with*** what he had done, the boss garv him 200 dollars as an extra cash bonus.

对他所做的事感到满意，老板给他二百美元作为一笔现金额外奖金。(Pleased with=be pleased with, 系表)

4. ***Ashamed of*** having done so little for the company, he made up his mind to work harder.

由于对公司做的事太少而感到惭愧，他下决心要更加努力。(=be ashamed of, 系表)

【语言材料】

1. be tired of　厌烦，厌于…

2. save up 积攒
3. for the first time 首次
4. a storm brew up 刮起一阵暴风(blow up 指起风)
5. a gust of wind 一阵狂风
6. sweep sth off 把某物刮离…
7. be smashed to pieces 被砸成碎片
8. be unhurt 没有受伤
9. go to sleep 睡着

【习题】

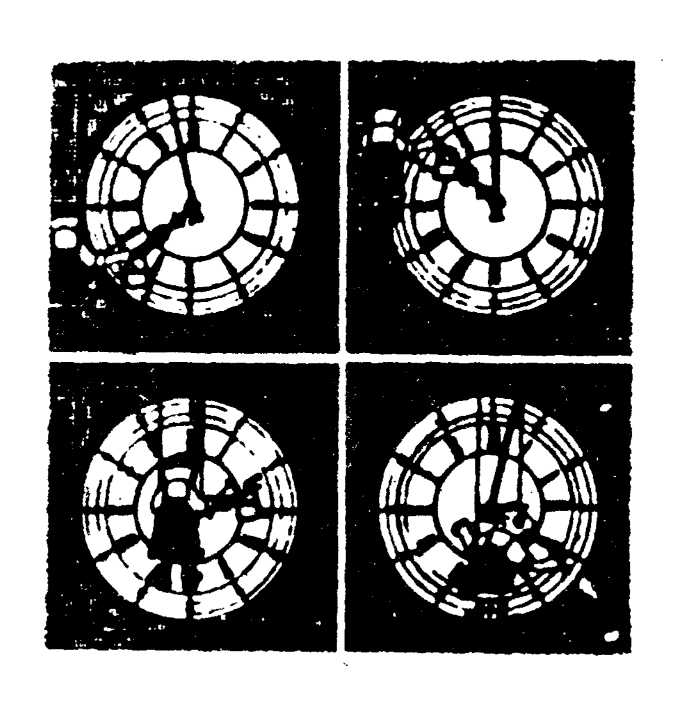
组成分词状语

1. ________(injure 受伤) in an accident, he was fired(解雇) by his boss.
2. ________(lead) by the Party. the Chinese people have stood up.
3. ________(invite) to the party, he was very much pleased.
4. ________(move) to tears, she took out her handkerchief and dried (擦干) her eyes.
5. Greatly ________(affect 感动) by his speech, the students all voiced their support for the proposal(表示支持这个建议)。
6. ________(carry on 进行) by John, the experiment will be a success.
7. When ________(heat 加热), water changes into steam .
8. ________(inspire 鼓舞) by the ideal of the four modernizations, they plunge into(投入) their present work.
9. ________(elect 选举) chairman of the students' union, he decided to work well.
10. ________(post 邮寄) the day before yesterday, the letter would probably have reached her.

50 *A Famous Clock**

一只著名的大钟

本课重点 时态复习



When you visit London ,one of the first things you will see is Big Ben , the famous clock which can be heard all over the world on the B. B. C. If the Houses of Parliament had not been burned down in 1834, the great clock would never have been erected.

当你参观伦敦时，首先看到的东西之一就是大本钟。这是一只全世界都能在英国广播公司的广播里听到的著名大钟。要是议会大厦在1834年不曾被烧毁的话，这只巨大的钟也永远不会被安装起来。

Big Ben takes its name from Sir Benjamin Hall who was responsible for the making of the clock when the new Houses of Parliament were being built. It is not noly of immense size, but is extremely accurate as well. Officials from Greenwich Observatory have the clock checked twice a day.

大本钟取名于本杰明·霍尔爵士，因为他在建造新议会大厦时负责建造这只大钟。它不仅体积巨大，而且还极其准确。格林尼治天文台的高级职员每天都要对钟进行两次检查。

On the B. B. C. you can hear the clock when it is actually

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第2册第71课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(上)第134页。

striking because microphones are connected to the clock tower. Big Ben has rarely gone wrong. Once, however, it failed to give the correct time. A painter who had been working on the tower hung a pot of paint on one of the hands and slowed it down!

在收听 B. B. C. 广播时,你能听到钟事实上在敲打的声音,因为麦克风是与钟楼相联结的。大本钟很少出过差错。不过有一次,它报错了时。一个一直在钟楼上干活的油漆工把一桶油漆挂在一根指针上因此就使钟走慢了!

【习题】

通过这篇文章的阅读,请注意以下几点:

1. 找出虚拟过去的结构。
2. 找出使役结构。
3. 找出定语从句。
4. 找出被动态的 be being 结构。
5. 找出"不仅,而且"的结构。
6. 找出动词+副词,动词+介词,形容词+介词,动词+形容词,动词+不定式的词组。
7. 注意 the, a 冠词的使用。
8. 注意由 be 组成的被动态,及由情态动词及完成式所组成的被动语态。

【语言材料】

1. be burned down　被烧毁
2. be erected　被安装起来
3. takes its name from　取名于…
4. be responsible for　为…而负责
5. be of immense size　体积巨大
6. be accurate　准确

7. twice a day　一天两次

8. be connected to　与…相联结

9. go wrong　出差错

10. fail to　没能

11. give the correct time　报时准确

12. slow...down　使…减慢

【习题】

选择填空

( ) 1. It is ________ very big and very accurate.

a. also　　b. both

c. such　　d. so

( ) 2. How often ________ it checked?

a. they have　　b. have they

c. do they have　　d. they had

( ) 3. A painter ________ working on the tower hung a pot of paint on one of the hands.

a. who　　b. had been

c. had　　d. ×

( ) 4. You can hear it when it is actually striking.

You can hear it ________ it is striking.

a. the moment　　b. the hour

c. really　　d. indeed

( ) 5. The clock slowed down. It ________.

a. went slowly　　b. was slow

c. was behind　　d. went back

( ) 6. The Houses of Parliament had been burned down and that's why the great clock ________.

a. has been erected　　b. is put up

c. is built　　d. was erected

( ) 7. Greenwich Observatory had Officials ________ the clock two

times a day.

a. checked　　b. to check

c. been checked　　d. check

( ) 8. If you had not visited London you ________ the great clock.

a. would have not seen　　b. would probably see

c. would have never seen　　d. wouldn't have seen

( ) 9. The clock was erected after 1834. That'when it was ________.

a. builded　　b. setted up

c. put up　　d. put down

( ) 10. Did the famous observatory get Officials ________ the clock twice a week?

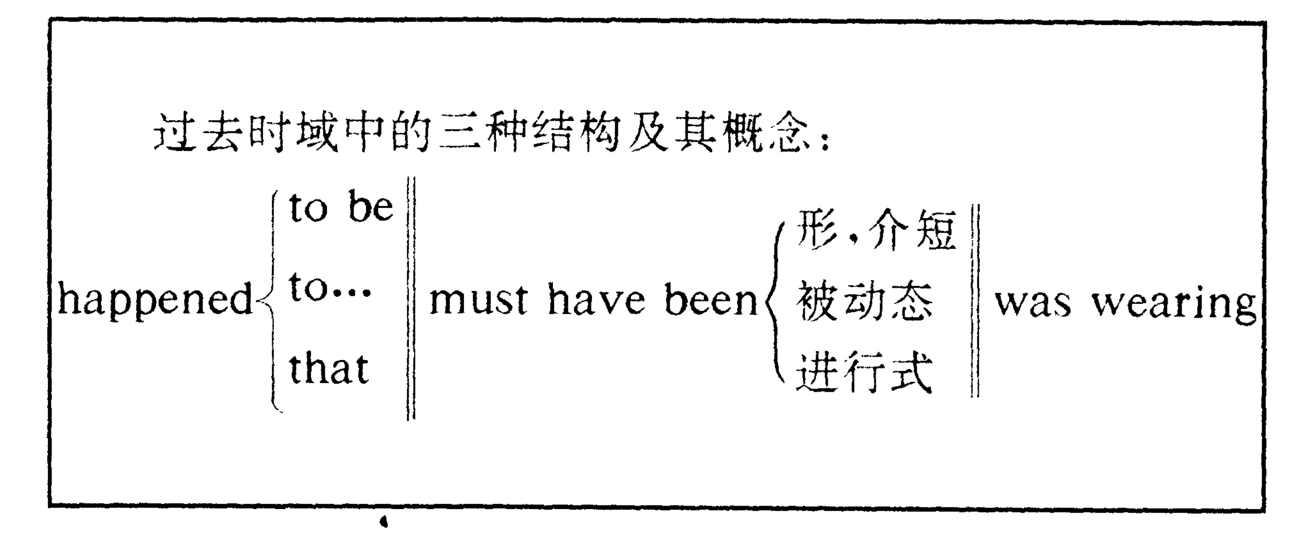
a. to check　　b. check

c. checking　　d. checked

Ⅱ. 重要结构及概念的深化

51 *An Unknown Goddess*[*]

一个不知名的女神



Some time ago, an interesting discovery was made by archaeologists on the Aegean island of Kea. An American team explored a temple which stands in an ancient city on the promontory of Ayia Irini. The city at one time ***must have been prosperous***, for it enjoyed a high level of civilization.

不久前，考古学家们在岂亚的爱琴海岛上有一项有趣的发现，一个美国考古探索队察看了一所庙宇，它座落在阿埃衣亚·阿埃里尼海角的一座古城里。这座古城谅必在某一时期很繁荣，因为它享有高度文明。

---

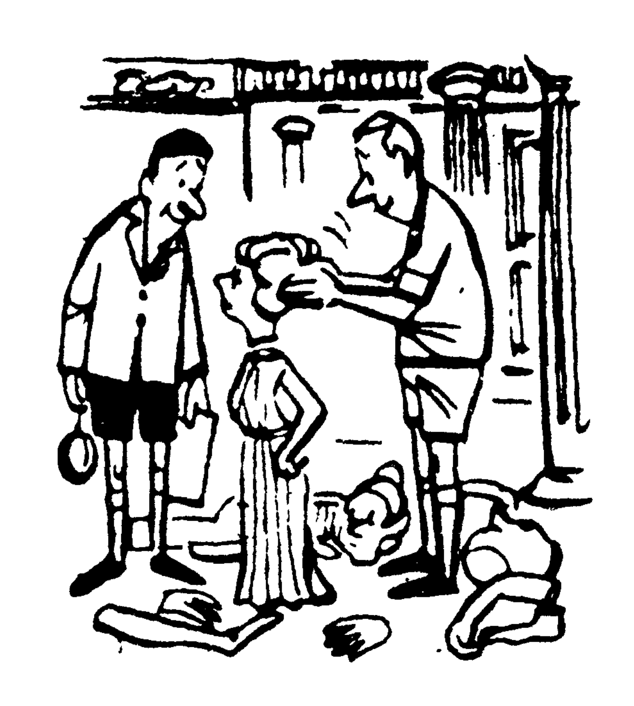
* 选自《新概念英语》第3册第3课。

参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(中)第7页。

Houses—often three storeys high—were built of stone. They had large rooms with beautifully decorated walls. The city was even equipped with a drainage system, for a great many clay pipes were found beneath the narrow streets.

那些房子——通常是三层楼高——都是用石头砌成的。房间宽敞，墙壁装饰华丽。这座城市还装有排水系统，因为在狭窄的街道下面被人发现过许多陶土管道。

The temple which the archaeologists explored was used as a place of worship from the fifteenth century B. C. until Roman times. In the most sacred room of the temple, clay fragments of fifteen statues were found. Each of these represented a goddess and had, at one time, been painted. The body of one statue was found among remains dating from the fifteenth century B. C. Its missing head ***happened to be*** among remains of the fifth century B. C. This head ***must have been found*** in Classical times and carefully preserved. It was very old and precious even then.



考古学家们所考察的那所庙宇，从公元前15世纪直到罗马时代都被用作祭祀场所。在庙中最圣洁的殿堂中，被发现有十五尊塑像的陶土残片，每尊塑像都代表一位女神，而且曾一度经过彩绘。其中有尊塑像的残体是从公元前15世纪的遗迹中发现的。它的失踪了的头颅**碰巧**就在公元前5世纪的残留物中摆着。这个头颅**说不定**是在古希腊罗马时代就被发现过而被小心地保存下来的。即使在那时，它也是非常古老和十分珍贵的。

When the archaeologists reconstructed the fragments, they

were amazed to find that the goddess turned out to be a very modern-looking woman. She stood three feet high and her hands rested on her hips. She ***was wearing*** a full-length skirt which swept the ground. Despite her great age, she was very graceful indeed. but, ***So far***, the archaeologists ***have been unable to*** discover her identity.

当考古学家们重新把残片拼接复原时，他们惊奇地发现这位女神竟是一位外表非常时髦的女子。她高有三英尺，双手搁在腰部。她穿着一条拖地长裙。尽管她年事已高，但她的确非常优雅，可是迄今为止，考古学们**一直未能**弄清她的身份。

【讲解】

1. 从本课开始进入第二章关于重要结构及概念的深化问题的讨论。下列选编的十篇文章是《新概念英语》第三册前二十课的选编，第三册的其它篇章可以作为泛读材料。前二十课还是属于基础英语，明显地突出某些语言点的阐述。

   关于本课 happened to be (to…, that)，是与过去时态有联系的一种表达。(注意单独的 happen，指发生，不能与人连用)

例 He ***happened to have*** heard of the place.

他**碰巧**听说**过**这个地方。

He ***happened to be*** in town.

他恰好在城里。

It (so) ***happened that*** I had no money with me.

恰好我没带钱。

但不能说 What you had happened?

What did you happen?

应说： What happened to you? (to the money?)

你出了什么事，你怎么啦？(钱是怎么用掉的？)

在条件句中的 happen，大致的意思是“要是”(委婉语气)

例 ***If*** you ***happen to*** meet Mr Jack, tell him to come at

once.

要是你见到杰克先生，告诉他马上来一下。(happen 在条件句中一般并无特定涵意)

2. must have (been)，特指在过去所发生的事，不是指目前，其概念是一种揣测，可理解为"说不定已，谅必"。请看下表：

指过去	指目前
must have (谅必) cannot have (不见得已…) (mustn't have)	must be (大概是) cannot be (不至于是)

请注意下列例句，并注意有关概念：

If he had worked harder, he ***must have*** succeeded.

他若更勤奋些，他**谅必**已成功过了.(指过去)

He ***must have*** said so.

他**说不定**这样说了。(指过去)

He ***cannot have*** done such a thing.

他**不见得**会做这样的事情。(指过去)

It ***cannot be*** true.

那**不至于**是真的。(指目前)

=It is impossible that it is true.

He ***must be*** in by now.

现在他**大概**在家.(指目前)

She ***must have been*** fired.

她**谅必**被辞退了。(指前几天，上月等)

She ***must have been*** very poor ***at that time.***

那时她**谅必**很穷。

She ***must have been*** playing tennis in the park when you phoned ***yesterday.***

昨天你打电话去的时候她**说不定**一直在公园里打网球。

3. wear 这个词可以用 be wearing。但 have on（穿，戴）不用 be having on。

例 She *was wearing* a full-length skirt...

＝She *was dressed in* a full-length skirt...

这里要说明的：was wearing 没有“正在进行”的概念。

【语言材料】

1. make a discovery　发现
2. at one time　一度，在某一时期

   辨：at a time 每次（each time）
3. be equipped with　装有，备有
4. a great many　许多（接可数名词）
5. dating from　年代溯自…
6. be amazed to find　惊奇地发现
7. turn out to be　竟然是，原来是
8. rest on　靠在，搁在
9. have been unable to　始终未能
10. even then　即使在那时

【习题】

选择填空

(　) 1. The interesting discovery ________ by the archaeologists was that the temple had been used as a place of worship.

a. was made　　b. was discovered

c. was found　　d. made

(　) 2. The temple ________ used as a place of worship since Roman times.

a. was　　b. had been

c. has been　　d. must be

(　) 3. So far, they ________ to discover her identity.

a. can not have　　b. have been impossible

c. have not been able d. have not been necessary

( ) 4. The goddess ________ to be a very modern looking woman.

a. turned b. profed

c. changed d. appeared

( ) 5. If she is borrowing money, she ________ into debt.

a. must be getting b. must have been getting

c. would getting d. is most likely

( ) 6. His progress shows that he is working hard. He ________ hard.

a. must have worked b. must be working

c. would certainly work d. is going to work

( ) 7. His watch ________. I will go and call him.

a. must be stopped b. must have been stopped

c. must stopped d. must have stopped

( ) 8. It ________ that I was not in Beijing at the time.

a. happened b. was so happened

c. happened to me d. was happened

( ) 9. One day I ________ run across(撞见)Berry Dodge.

a. happen to b. was happened to

c. happened to d. didn't happened to

( ) 10. ________ her diamonds?

a. Did she wearing b. Was she having on

c. Was she wearing d. Was she weared

( ) 11. I wonder if you ________ whether there's a good theatre in this city.

a. happened to find b. happened to know

c. happen to know d. had been known

( ) 12. ________ that I found the ticket in my pocket.

a. So fat b. Until now

c. I happened d. It happened

( ) 13. She ________ a red flower in her hair.

a. went out and was having b. was wearing

on c. put it on

d. was carrying

( ) 14. She ________ my letter, otherwise he would have replied before now.

a. must have not received

b. mustn't have received

c. must have been received

d. must perhaps been receiving

( ) 15. The temple was in a place ________ nobody knew.

a. where
b. in where
c. which
d. in which

52 *The Double Life of Alfred Bloggs**

两面派

> will be + ing 的另一概念及 too…to 不一定都有"太…以致不能"的概念

These days, people who do manual work often receive far more money than clerks who work in offices. People who work in offices are frequently referred to as "white collar workers" for the simple reason that they usually wear a collar and tie to go to work.

这年头，干体力活的人通常比坐办室的小职员收入丰厚得多。坐在办公室里工作的人常常被叫做"白领工"，说来道理也很简单，原因是他

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第3册第4课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(中)第9页。

们通常穿硬领系着领带去上班。

Such is human nature, that a great many people are often willing to sacrifice higher pay for the privilege of becoming white collar workers. This can give rise to curious situations, as it did in the case of Alfred Bloggs who worked as a dustman for the Ellesmere Corporation.

这就是人之常情，君不见有许多人常常心甘情愿放弃较高的工资以求当白领工的殊荣吗？这往往会引起种种怪现象，象在埃尔斯米尔公司当清洁工的阿尔弗莱德·勃洛格斯身上所发生的那种事便是一个例子。

When he got married, Alf was ***too*** embarrassed ***to*** say anything to his wife about his job. He simply told her that he worked for the Corporation. Every morning, he left home dressed in a fine black suit. He then changed into overalls and spent the next eight hours as a dustman. Before returning home at night, he took a shower and changed back into his suit. Alf did this for over two years and his fellow dustmen kept his secret.

在结婚时，阿尔弗感到实在太窘以致没有向她的妻子谈到关于其本人工作的事。他只是告诉她他在一家公司工作。每天早晨，他穿着一套考究的黑西装离家。然后他又换上工作服，当八小时的清洁工。夜里回家前，他洗个淋浴，又重新换上他的那套西装。阿尔弗这样干了有两年多而他的清洁工哥儿们都为他保密。

Alf's wife has never discovered that she married a dustman and she never will, for Alf has just found another job. He ***will*** soon ***be working*** in an office as a junior clerk. He ***will be***

earning only half as much as he used to, but he feels that his rise in status is well worth the loss of money. From now on, he will wear a suit all day and others will call him "Mr Bloggs", not "Alf".

阿尔弗的妻子从未发现过自己嫁给了一个清洁工，而且她永远也不会发现了。因为阿尔弗刚刚找到了另一个职业。他马上**会**在一个事务所里工作当一名低级办事员了。他的收入只**会**有原来的一半那么多，但是他认为他自己地位的提高倒是值得损失一些钱的，从今开始，他要整天穿西装，别人要叫他"勃洛格斯先生"，而不是"阿尔弗"了。

【讲解】

1. 我们不能把 will work 和 will be working 都译成"将工作"。在第十一课曾介绍过 will be＋ing，其概念是"打算，准备"。

   will be ＋ ing 还有另一种概念，就是＝"会"。

例 she won't come. 她不来。
she ***won't be coming*** 她不**会**来。

Tom won't cut grass. 汤姆不割草。
Tom ***won't be cutting*** the grass. 汤姆不会割这草。

Shall I ***be distrubing*** you if I do my typing here?
我在这里打字**会**打扰你吗？

Will they ***be coming*** this way?
他们**会**从这条路来吗？

2. 一般都把 too…to 解释为"太…以致不能"＝so…(that)…cannot (…not)

例 He is ***too*** old ***to*** learn
他年纪太大了，不能学了。
＝He is ***so*** old ***that*** he ***cannot*** learn.

本课：Alf was ***too*** embarrassed ***to*** say anything to his wife about his job.

＝Alf was ***so*** embarrassed (***that***) he ***didn't*** say anything

to his wife about his job.

以上讲的只是一般规律，但不完全都是这样。

例 She was ***too*** anxious ***to*** please his husband.

她**太**心急反而**不能**取悦她的丈夫。(误)

她太急于取悦她的丈夫。(正)

例 She was ***too*** anxious ***to*** please ***to*** please.

这句话看上去好像是一句错句，其实没有错，意思是她太急于取悦于人反而不讨好。

从 be anxious to 可以看出，这个 to 并不构成反义而是后面一个 to 构成反义。

【语言材料】

1. these days 现今，这年头
2. manual work 体力活(为 mental work 之对)
3. far more 多得多的
4. be referred to as 被称为。主动态为：refer to *sb* as，不能写成 refer *sb* to as…
5. be human nature 人之常情(不合人情为 be not human nature)
6. be willing to 情愿
7. sacrifice A for B 为了求得 B 而牺牲 A
8. the privilege of …那种殊荣
9. give rise to 引起
10. curious situations 怪现象
11. work as 充当
12. get married 结婚
13. work for 在…上班
14. change into 换上
15. change back into 重新再换上
16. take a shower 淋浴
17. keep sb's secret 为某人保密

18. half as much as　像…一半那么多

19. be well worth　值得

20. from now on　今后

21. all day　整天

【问题】

选择填空

(　) 1. Alfred Bloggs ________ a double life.

a. leads　　b. leaded

c. plays　　d. played

(　) 2. Alf was ________ anything to his wife.

a. so embarrassed he said

b. very embarrassed and said

c. very embarrassed, so he said

d. so embarrassed he did not say

(　) 3. His earnings were only half the amount ________.

a. than they were to be

b. as they used to be

c. as they used to

d. as they were used to

(　) 4. People referred ________ "Alf".

a. him as　　b. him to as

c. to him as　　d. to him as for

(　) 5. ________ his rise in status well worth the loss of money?

a. Did　　b. Does

c. Was　　d. Didn't

(　) 6. She has never discovered that she married a dustman and she never will ________.

a. marry　　b. get married

c. marry a dustman　　d. discover

(　) 7. The child is too eager to have the candy. He ________.

a. does not like candy

b. wants to have it very much

c. wants to have it but he can not eat it

d. is so eager that he cannot have it

( ) 8. What did Alfred Bloggs tell her when she ________ him?

a. was married to b. married with

c. was married with d. got married with

( ) 9. Where will Alfred Bloggs ________ in future?

a. work the corporation b. have worked

c. have been working d. be working

( ) 10. I must go, my mother ________ for me.

a. will wait b. is going to wait

c. will have waited d. will be waiting

53 *The Facts**

实 情

<table>
<tr><td colspan="3">冠词和无冠词</td></tr>
<tr><td>a journalist
the journalist</td><td>be sent to prison</td><td>go to press</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">倒装句用词:seldom, not only, only then,
little, hardly, never</td></tr>
</table>

Editors of newspapers and magazines often ***go to extremes*** to provide their readers with unimportant facts and statistics. Last year a journalist had been instructed by a well-known magazine

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第3册第5课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(中)第13页。

to write an article on the president's palace in a new African republic.

报章杂志的编辑经常采取极端手段向读者提供毫无意义的事实和统计数字。去年一位记者曾受命于一家著名的杂志，指示他写一篇文章，报导关于在非洲的一个共和国的总统官邸的情况。

When the article arrived, the editor read the first sentence and then refused to publish it. The article began: "Hundreds of steps lead to the high wall which surrounds the president's palace." The editor at once sent the journalist a telegram instructing him to find out the exact number of steps and the height of the wall.

文章寄到后，编者读了第一句就不愿意发表了。文章一开始说："数以百计的台阶通向围绕总统官邸的高墙。"这位编辑马上给记者发了一封电报，指示他弄清台阶的确切数字和围墙的高度。

The journalist immediately set out to obtain these important facts, but he took a long time to send them. Meanwhile, the editor was getting impatient, for the magazine would soon ***go to press***. He sent the journalist two urgent telegrams, but received no reply. He sent ***yet another*** telegram informing the journalist that if he did not reply soon he would be fired. When the journalist again failed to reply, the editor reluctantly published the article as it had originally been written.

这位记者马上着手去获取这些重要的情况，可是他花了很长时间才把情况寄出去。在此期间，编者越来越不耐烦了，因为杂志马上要付印。他发给这个记者两封急电，但没有收到回信。他又发了一封电报

通知记者说如果不立即回信他就要被解雇。当记者又一次没有答复，这个编辑无可奈何地将文章照原来写的样子发表了。

A week later, the editor at last received a telegram from the journalist. ***Not only*** had the poor man been arrested, ***but*** he had ***been sent to prison as well.*** However, he had at last been allowed to send a cable in which he informed the editor that he had been arrested while counting the 1084 steps leading to the 15 foot wall which surrounded the president's palace.

一星期后，编者终于收到了发自那个记者的电报。这个不幸的人不但已被逮捕而且已被送进监狱。然而，他终究还是得到容许发一封电报，通知编者正当他在数通向15英尺高的总统官邸围墙的1084级台阶时，他被逮捕了。

【讲解】

1. 冠词 the，不定冠词 a，(an)在本课与不用冠词的某些固定词组同时出现。例如：

   go to extremes 不用 go to the extremes 但可以说 run to ***an*** extreme,

   其状语形式为：in ***the*** extreme(极其)，to ***an*** extreme

   比较：

   They often ***go to extremes*** in their views.
   他们看问题总是趋向极端。
   This work is difficult ***in the extreme.***
   这项工作极其困难。

2. be sent to prison 不用 be sent to the prison. go to press 不用 go to the press，但可以说，send(put) a manuscript to ***the*** press(把原稿付印)，write a letter to ***the*** press (向报纸写信)。

3. 在表达"又一"时用 yet another

   例 It is ***yet another*** achievement of modern science.
   这是现代科学的**又一**成就。

He sent ***yet another*** telegram...

他**又**发了**一**封电报。

This led to ***yet another*** angry argument.

这就引起了**又一次**激烈的争吵。

4. 凡有下列词放句首均应倒装：

1) ***Seldom*** did she show her feelings.

她很少流露出她的感情。

=She seldom showed her feelings.

2) ***Never*** will I trust him again.

我将永远不再信任他。

=I will never trust him again.

3) ***Not only*** has he made this mistake before but he will make it again.

他不仅以往犯这错误以后他还是要犯。

=He has not only made this mistake before but he will make it again.

4) ***Only then*** did I realize what was happening.

只有到那时我才理解出了什么事。

=I realized what was happening only then.

5) ***Never*** have I seen so many people.

我从未见过这么多人。

=I have never seen so many people.

6) ***Hardly*** had I finished speaking when the door opened.

我刚讲完门就打开了。

I had hardly fimished speaking when the door opened.

7) ***Little*** does he realize the danger he is in.

他一点也不知道他所处的危险境地。

=He little realizes the danger he is in.

另外还有两种常用的：

8) ***On no account*** should we follow blindly.

我们决不应盲从·

=We should on no account follow blindly.

9) ***At no time*** should we relax our vigilance.

任何时候我们都不应放松警惕。

=We should at no time relax our vigilance.

【语言材料】

1. go to extremes　采取过分的，极端手段
2. provide *sb* with　向人提供…
3. be instructed to　受命去…
4. refuse to　拒绝，不愿
5. hundreds of　数以百计的
6. find out　了解，查明
7. the exact　确切的
8. set out to=set about+动名词　着手
9. be getting　越来越
10. yet another　又一
11. fail to　没能
12. not only...but...as well　不仅，而且(本句型不用 but also)=not only...but also

not only +否定内容 but +否定内容 either (不用 as well)

13. go to press=come to press　付印
14. be sent to prison=be put into prison　关进监狱
15. while counting=while he was counting　当他正在数…
16. lead to　通向
17. be allowed to　允许某人，被允准去…
18. inform *sb* that　通知某人说…，或 inform sb of...通知某人关于…之事

【习题】

选择填空

(　) 1. Why had the journalist been arrested? Because his activities ________.

a. had gone to extremes

b. were to provide facts

c. were measuring the height of the wall

d. must have appeared suspicious

(　) 2. He sent the journalist two telegrams, but did not receive ________.

a. the reply　　　b. a reply

c. the replies　　　d. any other replies

(　) 3. He informed ________ while carrying out (执 行) his instructions.

a. his arrest to the editor　　　b. the editor his arrest

c. the editor that his arrest had been on

d. the editor of his arrest

(　) 4. He had at last been ________ a telegram.

a. admitted to send

b. allowered to send

c. given permission to dispatch

d. appproved to disptch

(　) 5. The palace is magnificent(壮观)________.

a. run to an extreme　　　b. go to extremes

c. to the extreme　　　d. in the extreme

(　) 6. Having read ________ sentence, the editor rufused to publish it.

a. a first　　　b. the first

c. first three　　　d. opening

(　) 7. Only in this way ________ English more effectively.

a. we can study　　　b. we should study

c. can we learn　　　d. can we learn from the

(　) 8. Seldom ________; she is usually too sad.

a. she smiles　　　b. smiles she

c. does she smile　　　d. smiles her

( ) 9. No sooner ________ the receiver than the telephone rang again.

a. was she putting down　　b. did she put it back

c. had she put down　　d. she had put down

( ) 10. Little ________ that they had made such important discoveries in science.

a. realized they　　b. they realized

c. they have realized　　d. did they realize

( ) 11. Hardly ________ that his condition would turn for the better.

a. had I been expected　　b. had I been hoping for

c. did I expect　　d. would be expected

( ) 12. Never ________ that the work would be completed so soon.

a. had he think　　b. he thought of

c. thought he　　d. did he expect

( ) 13. Not only ________ work hard ourselves, we should also get other people interested in the work.

a. we ought　　b. we ought to

c. ought to we　　d. should we

( ) 14. Only then ________ the news.

a. I was instructed by　　b. instructed me

c. had I informed to　　d. did I hear

( ) 15. Never ________ made such great efforts(努力)to develop industry.

a. there is a country　　b. a country there is

c. has any country　　d. did any country has

54 *Smash and Grab**

砸 和 抢

with 的复合结构（作状语，定语）
模式：with＋名词（代）＋副词（现在分词，介词短语等）

{ ***with*** its headlights ***on*** and its horn ***blaring***,…
{ ***with*** black stockings ***over their faces***,…

The expensive shops in a famous arcade near Piccadilly were just opening. At this time of the morning, the arcade was almost empty. Mr Taylor, the owner of a jewellery shop was admiring a new window display.

在靠近皮卡迪利繁华大街的一条著名的拱廊街上，几家高级商店刚刚开门营业。在早晨的这个时候，拱廊街上几乎没有什么顾客。一家珠宝店老板泰勒先生正在欣赏一个新陈列的橱窗。

Two of his assistants had been working busily since 8 o'clock and had only just finished. Diamond necklaces and rings had been beautifully arranged on a background of black velvet. Af-

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第3册第6课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(中)第14页。

ter gazing at the display for several minutes, Mr Taylor went back into his shop.
他的两个店员打八点以后一直忙到现在，并且刚刚忙完。钻石项链和戒指华丽地布置在黑色丝绒上面。泰勒先生对橱窗布置凝视了几分钟之后就走回到店里去了。

The silence was suddenly broken when a large car, ***with*** its headlights ***on*** and its horn ***blaring***, roared down the arcade. It came to a stop outside the jeweller's. One man stayed at the wheel while two others ***with*** black stockings ***over their faces*** jumped out and smashed the window of the shop with iron bars. While this was going on, Mr Taylor was upstairs. He and his staff began throwing furniture out of the window. Chairs and tables went flying into the arcade.
突然，一片寂静被打破了，只见一辆大汽车开着头灯响着喇叭呼啸而至拱廊街。它在珠宝店外面停了下来。一个男人呆在汽车里开车而其余两个脸上蒙有黑色针织物的人跳下汽车用铁棍砸碎了这家商店的橱窗。当这一切正在发生的时候泰勒先生正呆在楼上。他和他的职员开始向窗外掷家具。椅子和桌子一路飞到了拱廊街上。

One of the thieves was struck by a heavy statue, but he was too busy helping himself to diamonds to notice any pain. The raid was all over in three minutes, for the men scrambled back into the car and it moved off at a fantastic speed. Just as it was leaving, Mr Taylor rushed out and ran after it throwing ash-trays and vases, but it was impossible to stop the thieves. They had got away with thousands of pounds worth of diamonds.
其中有一个窃贼被一尊沉重的塑像击中，但是他忙于抢钻石也顾不到痛。三分钟后这场抢劫就结束了，因为这些贼人慌忙爬进汽车把汽车飞快地开走了。当汽车正在开走的时候，泰勒先生冲了出来，紧追在汽车后面一边投掷烟灰缸和花瓶，但是要抓贼是抓不到了。他们终于逃走了，带着价值数千英磅的钻石。

【讲解】

1. with 的复合结构形式比较灵活，可以跟副词，形容词，不定式，分词(现在分词或过去分词)，介词短语等，常被用作状语或定语。

   例 1) Do you mean the man ***with*** a tall hat ***on***(作定语)。

   你是不是说那个戴礼帽的人?(跟副词)

   2) The house ***with*** its roof ***damaged*** has now been repaired.(作定语)

   那幢房顶被损坏了的屋子现在已经修好了。(跟过去分词)

   3) The factory ***with*** its chimney ***smoking*** was built in 1980.(作定语)

   烟囱冒烟的那家工厂是1980年建造的。(跟现在分词)

   4) ***With*** so many essays ***to write***, I doubt if I shall have time to visit you.(作状语)

   有这么多论文要写，我不知道是否还有时间来拜访你。(跟不定式)

   5) ***With*** the whole meeting ***in uproar*** the chairman gave up the attempt to take a vote.(作状语)

   由于整个会议吵吵闹闹，主席放弃了投票的打算。(跟介词短语)

   6) Have you found the table ***with*** one leg ***shorter*** than the others?(作定语)

   你有没有找到那张有一条腿比其他腿短的桌子?(跟形容词)

2. 跟过去分词，往往有一种被动的内涵，而跟现在分词则有自发的内涵.

   例 How can I work ***with*** that noise ***going*** on outside?

   外面这样不断地闹哄哄，我怎么能工作呢?

   例 We went home ***with*** the job ***finished.***

   因为工作完成了，我们回家了。

【语言材料】

1. have only just+过去分词 刚刚完成某件事。

例 I've only just posted that letter. 我刚把那封信寄走。

2. gaze at 凝视
3. down the… 沿着
4. come to a stop 停住
5. stay at the wheeel 呆在车里开车，man at the wheel，开车的人
6. jump out 跳出
7. go on 进行中
8. go + ing 一路…，表示去的一种方式

   例 They went hurrying into the room.

   他们匆匆走进房间。
9. help oneself to 偷，抢，占为已有
10. scramble into 爬进，钻进
11. move off 开走
12. at a fantastic speed 飞快地
13. rush out 冲出
14. run after 追赶
15. stop the thief 抓贼
16. 数字+ ***worth of*** 价值…的东西

    例 I bought ten pounds ***worth of*** food.

    我买了价值10英镑的食物。

    Canada imported about two million dollars' ***worth of*** goods from the United States.

    加拿大从美国进口大约价值二百万美元的货物。

    two million dollars' 也可以不用“'”

【习题】

选择填空

( ) 1. With the guide ________ the way, we set off on foot that morning.

a. pointed　　b. led
c. leading　　d. in

( ) 2. He was left alone with no one ________.
a. to look after him　　b. looked after him
c. being looked after him　　d. being looking after

( ) 3. She has to go through the doorway with his head ________.
a. to fell down　　b. felling down
c. down　　d. bend

( ) 4. She sat in a chair with her legs ________.
a. crossed　　b. acrossed
c. acrossing　　d. crossing

( ) 5. I saw her driving along, with her hair ________ in the wind.
a. waved　　b. streamed
c. to wave away　　d. streaming

( ) 6. It is rude to speak with your mouth ________.
a. having anything to eat　　b. full
c. filled of something　　d. open wide

( ) 7. Do you know the woman with a friend ________?
a. in the army　　b. in the British
c. in Philippine　　d. in the Japan

( ) 8. The garden became beautiful with a gardener ________
a. has done much work
b. doing so many works
c. kept it tidy
d. to keep it tidy

( ) 9. All the afternoon he worked with the door ________.
a. locking　　b. locked
c. folded　　d. folding

( ) 10. With winter ________, it´s time to buy warm clothes.
a. comes on　　b. coming on
c. round into the cordner　　d. approached

( ) 11. She was lying on the bed with all her clothes ________.

a. up b. in

c. on d. by

( ) 12. I can't go out with all these dishes ________.

a. washed b. washing up

c. to wash d. to be washed up

( ) 13. With Mike ________, we've got more room.

a. sent to the prison b. put in the prison

c. got away d. away

( ) 14. I won't be able to go on holiday with my mother ________.

a. being suffered from cold b. suffered from cold

c. illed d. being ill

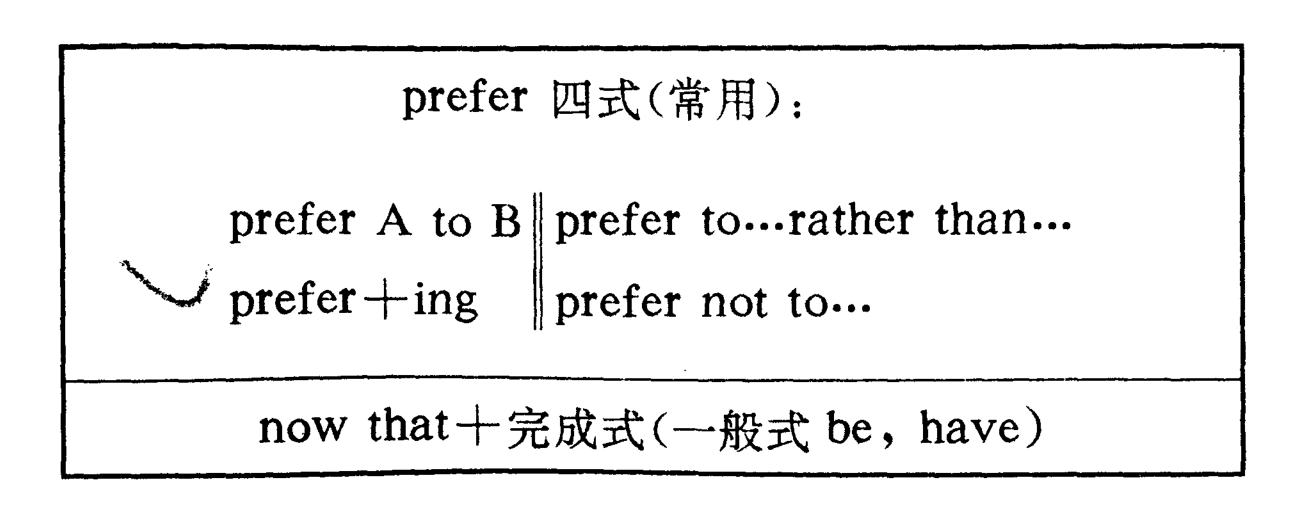
( ) 15. 1991 ended with nothing ________ in our school.

a. had been done b. settled

c. excited d. solving

55 *A Famous Monastery**

一所著名的修道院



prefer 四式(常用):

prefer A to B	prefer to…rather than…
prefer+ing	prefer not to…

now that+完成式(一般式 be, have)

* 选自《新概念英语》第3册第8课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(中)第21页。

The Great St Bernard Pass connects Switzerland to Italy. At 2470 metres, it is the highest mountain pass in Europe. The famous monastery of St Bernard, which was founded in the

eleventh century, lies about a mile away. For hundreds of years, St Bernard dogs have saved the lives of travellers crossing the dangerous Pass. These friendly dogs, which were first brought from Asia, were used as watch-dogs even in Roman times.

圣·伯纳德大隘口连接瑞士和意大利两国，其高度达2470米，它是欧洲最高的山地隘口。著名的建于11世纪的圣·伯纳德修道院，就位于离隘口一英里远的地方。几百年以来，圣·伯纳德的狗挽救了许多穿越危险隘口的旅游者的生命。这些友善的狗，先是从亚洲带进来的，甚至在罗马时代就被用来当作看门狗了。

Now that a tunnel has been built through the mountains, the Pass is less dangerous, but each year, the dogs are still sent out into the snow whenever a traveller is in difficulty. Despite the new tunnel, there are still a few people who rashly attempt to cross the Pass on foot.

既然穿越大山的隧道已被打通，隘口也就不那么危险了，但是每年只要有一个旅游者处于困境时这些狗仍然被派到雪地里去。尽管有了这条新的隧道，但仍然有些人冒冒失失地企图步行越过隘口。

During the summer months, the monastery is very busy, for it is visited by thousands of people who cross the Pass in cars. As there are so many people about, the dogs ***have to be kept in*** a special enclosure. In winter, however, life at the monastery is

quite different. The temperature drops to −30° and very few people attempt to cross the Pass.
在夏季,修道院非常繁忙,因为有数以千计的人乘汽车穿越隘口前来参观。由于到处有这么多人,所以只得把这些狗关在特制的狗栏里。然而在冬季,修道院的生活就大不一样了。气温降至零下30度,没有几个人企图通过这个隘口。

The monks ***prefer*** winter ***to*** summer for they have more privacy. The dogs have greater freedom, too, for they are allowed to wander outside their enclosure. The only regular visitors to the monastery in winter are parties of skiers who go there at Christmas and Easter. These young people, who love the peace of the mountains, always receive a warm welcome at St Bernard's monastery.
修道士们喜欢冬天而不喜欢夏天,因为在冬天他们过得更清静。狗也自由得多,因为它们可以跑出狗栏溜达。冬季到修道院来的常客只是几批滑雪者,他们在圣诞节和复活节去那里。这些年青人,他们都爱这山区的宁静,在圣·伯纳德修道院常常受到热烈的欢迎。

【讲解】

1. 本课所讲的 prefer 四式较为常用,也不很复杂。因为这属于基础英语,所以有必要举例谈一下:

   例 Prefer 跟名词或代词

   I ***prefer*** yellow ***to*** red. (这个 to 是介词)

   我更喜欢黄色而不喜欢红色。

   2) prefer 跟 to

   She ***prefers to*** stay at home ***rather than*** go with us.

   她宁愿呆在家里不愿和我们一起去。

   3) prefe 跟动名词

   Few children ***prefer*** working ***to*** playing. (to 是介词)

   很少有孩子只爱工作不爱玩耍。

4) prefer＋not to

At the moment, he ***preferred not to*** think about the future.

此刻，他宁愿不去考虑将来的事。

2)和4)中的 to 都是不定式。1)和3)中的 to 是介词，不能看成是不定式，例如不能作如下的表达：

He preferred death to ***become*** a traitor.（误）

他宁死而不当叛徒。

become 应改为 becoming. 另外，2)中的 rather than 后面省略了 to。

概念　prefer＝宁可选择，用以表示意向(inclination)，这与一般的选择(choose)不同，因为人们往往有 choose 他们不 prefer 的事。

例　A person may ***choose*** tea though he ***prefers*** coffee.

一个人有时可能会选择茶作为饮料虽然他更喜欢喝咖啡。

2. now that 的搭配，多数与完成时连用，但不完全非要与完成时态连用。本课是与完成时态搭配的：***Now that*** a tunnel ***has been built*** through the mountains,...

(既然穿越这些大山的隧道已被打通，…)

下面讲一下 now that 的结构：

1. ***Now that*** you ***have come***, you may as well stay.（用完成时态）

既来之，则安之。(may as well：还不如…为好)

1. ***Now that*** we ***are*** alone, we can speak freely.（用 be）

既然没有旁人，我们可以畅谈一下了。

3. ***Now that*** you ***have*** the chance you had better avail yourself of it.（用 have）

既然你有这机会，你最好还是利用它吧.(avail oneself of the chance　利用机会)

4. ***Now that*** she ***was*** really gone he felt sorry.（用 be，过去式）

此刻她真的走了，他感到难过。

注意，now that 有两种意思，一种是“既然”，一种是“此刻，这时”。要看上下文体会出其中的内涵。如4. 不能译成“既然她真的走了，他感到难过”，因为这是不通的，而1，不能译成“此刻”、“这时”，不然，语言就失去色彩了。

请选择出下一句的正确译文：

Now that I've heard the music I understand why you like it.

此刻我听到了这音乐我就懂得为什么你喜欢它了。

既然我已听到了音乐我就懂得你为什么喜欢它了。

第一个译文比第二个译文自然，第二个译文显得有点费解。

【语言材料】

1. connect A to B　把 A 和 B 连接起来
2. in Europe　在欧洲，Europe 用大写 E，一般不用定冠词
3. be founded　成立，建立
4. a mile away　一英里远，away＝distant（远）
5. hundreds of　数百
6. be used as　被用作
7. now that　既然（少数情况下为“此刻，这时”）
8. be sent out　被派出，送出
9. despite＝in spite of　尽管有

   despite＋名词　He came to the meeting ***despite*** his serious illness. 尽管有严重的疾病他还是来参加会议。despite the new tunnel，…尽管有一条新的隧道，…
10. attempt to　想，试图
11. the summer months　夏天、夏季
12. thousands of　数以千计的（hundreds of 数的百计的）
13. in cars　乘汽车
14. be kept in　被关在，被圈禁在…

15. －30° 读 minus thirty degrees

16. very few 极少有人，至多一两个人

17. have privacy 过清静的生活

18. be allowed to 被允准

19. regular visitors 常来的客人

20. parties of 一群群，一批批的

21. receive a warm welcome 受到热烈欢迎(welcome 可换 reception)被动态用 be given a warm welcome.

对比下列三句(注意主语)：

1) ***He*** was given a warm welcome. (他受到热烈欢迎。)

2) ***He*** was given a hot welcome. (他遭到迎头痛击。)

3) ***His speech*** was given a warm reception.

(他的发言受到强烈反对。本句主语不是人，而是物，事)

【习题】

选择填空

( ) 1. I ________ paper money ________ coins(硬币), because the former is lighter than the latter(后者)。

a. prefer to... rather than　　b. prefer using...

c. prefer to...than　　d. prefer...to

( ) 2. ________ he's grown up, he does whatever he pleases.

a. Whenever　　b. So that

c. Because of　　d. Now that

( ) 3. I ________ there rather than go by bus.

a. prefer going　　b. prefer to go

c. prefer to walk　　d. prefer not to go

( ) 4. While he was in California he preferred doing something ________ nothing.

a. rather than to do　　b. not to do

c. not to doing　　d. to doing

(　) 5. I prefer to read ________ sit here doing nothing at all.

a. than　　b. rather than to

c. to　　d. not to

(　) 6. So you prefer ________ abroad?

a. to living　　b. live

c. to live in the　　d. living

(　) 7. Oh, I prefer ________ alone.

a. to being　　b. being

c. to be in　　d. to be at

(　) 8. Now that you ________, you'd better have a rest.

a. are finished your works

b. have finished written your letter

c. have finished your work

d. have had your work doing

(　) 9. A person may ________ tea though he ________ coffee.

a. prefer…choose　　b. choose…prefers

c. choose…prefers to　　d. prefer…chooses to

(　) 10. You may vote for(选举)any other person you ________.

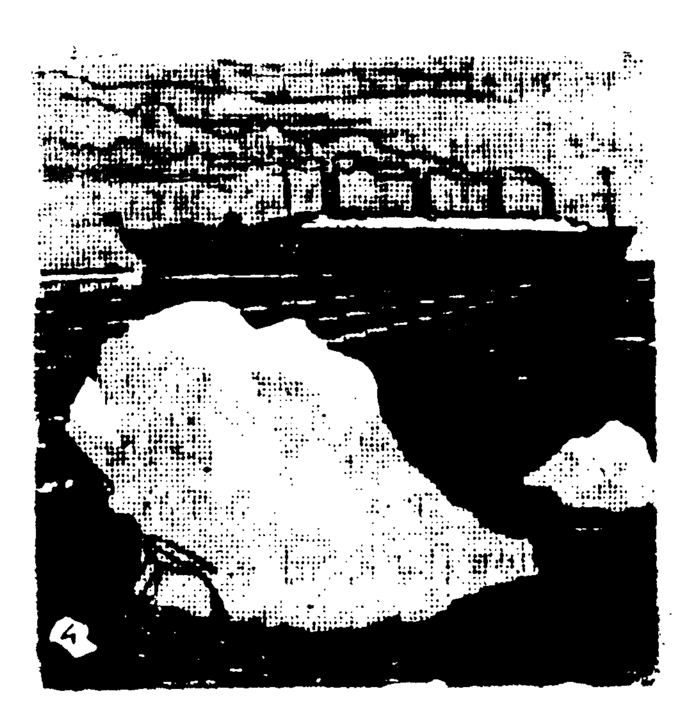
a. prefer　　b. prefer to him

c. prefer liking　　d. prefer to choice

56 *The Loss of the "Titanic"**

巨轮"泰坦尼克"号的失事

不定式作定语，不定式与不及物动词连用（表示目的或结果）
the order ***to abandon ship*** was given...
the great ship ***turned*** sharply ***to*** avoid...
the captain ***went down to*** see...
必须严格使用动词简单过去式（主动或被动式）的句型



The great ship, Titanic, sailed for New York from Southampton on April 10th, 1912. She was carrying 1316 passengers and a crew of 891. Even by modern standards, the 46,000 ton Titanic was a colossal ship. At that time, however, she was not only the largest ship that had ever been built, but was regarded as unsinkable, for she had sixteen watertight compartments.

巨轮泰坦尼克号在1912年4月10日从英国的港口南安普敦启航驶向

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第3册第10课
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(中)第27页。

纽约。当时她载有1316位乘客和891名船员。即使根据现代的标准来衡量，这艘四万六千吨的泰坦尼克号也算是一艘极大的轮船了。而在当时她不仅是所造的船中最大的一艘，并且被人们认为是不会沉没的船，因为她有十六个防水密封舱。

Even if two of these were flooded, she would still be able to float. The tragic sinking of this great liner will always be remembered, for she went down on her first voyage with heavy loss of life.

即使其中的两个密封舱进水，她仍然还有可能浮在水面上而不致沉没。人们永远不会忘记这艘巨轮的悲剧性的沉没，因为她竟在首航沉下海底，并造成惨重死亡。

Four days after setting out, while the Titanic was sailing across the icy waters of the North Atlantic, a huge iceberg *was* suddenly ***spotted*** by a look-out. After the alarm had been given, the great ship ***turned*** sharply ***to*** avoid a direct collision. The Titanic turned just in time, narrowly missing the immense wall of ice which rose over 100 feet out of the water beside her. Suddenly, there was a slight trembling sound from below, and the captain ***went down to*** see what had happened.

启程后四天，正当泰坦尼克号横渡北大西洋多冰的水域时，一个了望员突然发现一座巨大的冰山。警报一经发出，巨轮急速转向以避开一场迎头相撞的灾难。泰坦尼克号转得正好很及时，险些撞上了船边上的一座高出水面有一百英尺的巨大冰崖。突然，下面传来一阵轻微的震颤声，于是船长下去看看出了什么事。

The noise had been so faint that no one thought that the ship had been damaged. Below, the captain realized to his horror that the Titanic was sinking rapidly, for five of her sixteen watertight compartments had already been flooded! The order ***to abandon ship*** was given and hundreds of people plunged into the icy water. As there were not enough life-boats for every-

body, 1500 lives were lost.
响声始终很微弱，所以没有人会想到这艘船已经遭到损坏。走到下面的船长惊恐地意识到泰坦尼克号正在迅速下沉，因为十六个防水密封舱中已经有五个早已进水了！弃船的命令发出了，数以百计的人纵身跳进冰冷的海水中。由于当时没有足够的救生艇给每个人使用，于是有一千五百人遇难丧生。

【讲解】

1. 本课的时态是过去式及过去完成式，这一点我们都已学过了，尤其是过去完成式所表达的动作一定在动词过去式之前发生。我们不妨再来看一下课文：

   a）After the alarm [had been given]（先） the great ship [turned]（后） sharply to avoid a direct collision.

   b）...no one [thought]（后） that the ship [had been damaged]（先）.

   c）the captain [went]（后） down to see what [had happened]（先）.

2. 不定式作定语是一种重要的使语言简练的表达手段(注意下列不定式短语在句中的功能)：

   例 He became the first person ever ***to cross the Pacific*** by balloon.

   他成了乘汽球**横越太平洋的**首开先河的人。

   Besides, he has someone else's children ***to look after***。

   另外他还有别人的**要予以照看的**孩子们。

   The next thing ***to be considered*** is who is to give the course.

   要考虑的第二件事就是谁去讲这门课。

   They looked upon it as something ***to be proud of***

   他们把这件事看成为**值得骄傲的**事。

   The campaign ***to wipe out illiteracy*** in this area was in

full swing.

在这个地区**扫除文盲的**运动正在大力展开。

This gave him the courage and strength ***to face the difficulties in the days to come.***

这就给予他**今后面对困难**的勇气和力量。

3. 不及物动词常和不定式连用，是两个并存的动作，用 to 表达第二个动作（状态）。

注意：在表示目的时，这个 to＝in order to（以便），在表示结果时，这个 to＝and.

例 I got up (early)***to*** catch the first train.

我（一早）起身为了赶乘头班火车。

＝I got up(early) { ***in order to*** / ***so as to*** } catch the first train.

... the great ship turned sharply ***to*** avoid a direct collision.

(＝so as to avoid...)

...the captain went down ***to*** see what had happened.

(＝in order to see)

以上所指出的 to，都是表示目的。下面谈 to 表示结果：

例
I awoke ***to find*** myself lying in a strange place.
我一觉醒来发现我自己睡在一处奇怪陌生的地方。
＝I awoke (woke up)***and found*** myself lying in a strange place.

I turned ***to see*** the sun set。
我转身一看太阳下山了。
＝I turned and saw the sun set.

下面看看，该如何明确概念来解释"to"：

The boy grew up ***to*** be a fine youth＝He ________.

a) grew up ***in order to*** be a fine youth.（误）

b) grew up ***and became*** a fine youth.（正）

4. 在使用下列句型时，逗号后面的动词必须严格使用简单过去式。

例　While Mr Smith and his wife were out attending an evening party, his sister ________ (look) after their children.

这里必须使用 looked 不用其他时态。

句型模式：

While＋过去进行式，＋动词简单过去式(主动态或被动态)

└→等于：Just as, As, The moment, When

例　While I was studying, my friend ***arrived***.

While I was watering the garden, it ***began*** to rain.

While we were having a party, the lights ***went*** out.

While I was going to the airport, the taxi ***broke*** down.

对比本课句型：

While the Titanic ***was sailing*** across the icy waters of the North Atlantic, a huge iceberg ***was*** suddenly ***spotted*** by a look-out.

【语言材料】

1. sail for　驶向
2. be regarded as　被认为是…
3. even if　即使
4. be flooded　进水，受淹
5. go down　沉没，坠毁(飞机)
6. heavy loss of life　惨重的生命死亡
7. on her first voyage　进行处女航时
8. sail across　(船的)横渡
9. be spotted　被看见
10. just in time　非常及时
11. narrowly missing　照字面解释：仅一发之差没有碰上，一般用险些撞(碰)上，这里 missing 是状语，作 turned 的动词伴随。

例 He narrowly missed being seriously hurt by the explosion.

他险些被爆炸严重炸伤。(他仅一发之差没有被爆炸炸成重伤)

She just missed going to Jail.

他差点去坐牢。(仅一丝之差没有去坐牢)

miss 这个词后面跟动名词或名词。

例 He missed my meaning.

我的意思他没有听懂。

He narrowly missed being caught by the police.

他险些被警察抓走。(仅一丝之差没有被抓走)

He missed the ball.

他没接住球。

12. rise...out of　从…伸出
13. go down　走下去(对比5.)
14. to one's horror　使人惊恐地
15. give order　发命令
16. plunge into　纵身跳入,投身于
17. there are not enough　没有足够的…(不能说 no enough)
18. be lost　遇难

【习题】

选择填空

( ) 1. She ________ four days when a huge iceberg was suddenly spotted.

a. had been sailing　　b. was sailing

c. sailed　　d. sailed for

( ) 2. This will be a good chance ________.

a. to learn from him　　b. in learning from the workers

c. marrowly missed　　d. missed narrowly

( ) 3. We have no right (权利) ________ the people's money.

a. take away　　b. to waste

c. give order　　d. to be regarded as

(　) 4. At the same time we have to bear in mind(记在心上)the difficulties ________.

a. to overcome(克服)it　　b. to be overcomed

c. for us to overcome it　　d. to overcome

(　) 5. He arrived just as I ________.

a. was about leaving　　b. would left

c. was leaving　　d. would leave out

(　) 6. As I was coming here, I ________ your brother.

a. come across　　b. came cross

c. had met　　d. met

(　) 7. The monent he was speaking ________ a loud explosion(爆炸声).

a. we listened　　b. we have heard

c. suddenly broked　　d. there was

(　) 8. Delighted, she turned ***and dashed***(快跑)away.

斜体字部分＝

a. to be dashed　　b. to dash

c. and run　　d. and speed

(　) 9. Once in the night I woke ________ the wind blowing.

a. and hear　　b. to hear

c. to listen　　d. and feel

(　) 10. The shop owner went up ________ what was the matter.

a. to see　　b. and saw

c. and found that　　d. in order to found out

57 *Life on a Desert Island**

荒岛生活

wish + be(can, do have)的概念 Two men...***wished*** they ***had stayed*** there longer. (非一般虚拟)
if only＝how wonderful it would be if...

Most of us have formed an unrealistic picture of life on a desert island. We sometimes imagine a desert island to be a sort of paradise where the sun always shines. Life there is simple and good. Ripe fruit falls from the trees and you never have to work.

我们大多数人对荒岛生活都有一种不切实际的看法。我们有时候把荒岛想像为某种阳光终日普照的天堂，那儿的生活既简便又美好，成熟的果子从树上落下来而你永远不必去劳动。

The other side of the picture is quite the opposite. Life on a desert island is wretched. You either starve to death or live like Robinson Crusoe, waiting for a boat which never comes. Per-

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第3册第12课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(中)第34页。

haps there is an elcment of truth in both these pictures, but few of us have had the opportunity to find out.

另一种看法则完全相反。荒岛生活是悲惨的，你不是饿死就是活得像鲁宾逊那样巴望永远不会来到的船只。也许这两种看法都有一点道理，可是我们很少有人有机会去发现其中的奥秘。

Two men who recently spent five days on a coral island ***wished*** they ***had stayed*** there longer. They were taking a badly damaged boat from the Virgin Islands to Miami to have it repaired. During the journey, their boat began to sink. They quickly loaded a small rubber dinghy with food, matches, and tins of beer and rowed for a few miles across the Caribbean until they arrived at a tiny coral island.

有两个不久前在一个珊瑚岛上度过五天生活的人，**巴不得**他们在那儿多呆几天**才好呢**。他们准备带一条破烂不堪的小船从佛琴岛到迈阿密去叫人修理一下。在行程中，他们的船开始下沉，他们马上把食品，火柴，罐装啤酒都装上一条橡皮小救生筏然后用桨划了好几英里横越加勒比海到达一个小珊瑚岛。

There were hardly any trees on the island and there was no water, but this did not prove to be a problem. The men collected rain-water in the rubber dinghy. As they had brought a spear gun with them, they had plenty to eat. They caught lobster and fish every day, and, as one of them put it "ate like kings". When a passing tanker rescued them five days later, both men were genuinely sorry that they had to leave.

岛上几乎没有什么树也没有水，但这算不了什么困难，这两个人在橡皮救生筏内积聚雨水。由于他们随身带了一枝矛枪，他们有不少可吃的东西。他们每天逮鱼摸虾，因此，正如其中一个所说的那样"吃得像国王一样好"。当五天后一艘过往的油轮把他们救出后，这两个人深感难过，因为他们不得不离开那天堂般的荒岛了。

【讲解】

1. wish 这个词，使很多学英语的人搞得昏头转向，这主要是头脑里没有一个明确的概念。因此这个词应作为专题讨论。其实 wish 也是属于虚拟语气，我们首先要了解其结构，结构也是不那么容易理解的，比较复杂，要细心去观察并形成概念。（以下讲的都是 wish＋that 从句的虚拟语气）

   A）wish＋be 的结构：

   I ***wish*** I ***were*** interested in physics.

   但愿我对物理学发生兴**趣才好呢**.

   （实际上：I'm not interested in physics.）

   B）wish＋can 的结构：

   I ***wish*** (wished) I ***could*** understand the question.

   我**巴不得能**弄懂这个问题。

   C）wish＋do 的结构：

   I ***wish*** I ***knew*** his address.

   我要知道他的地址**该有多好**。

   D）wish＋have 的结构：

   I ***wish*** I ***had*** a limousine.

   我**真希望**有一辆大型高级轿车坐坐。

   E）wish＋第二，第三人称，用 would：

   I ***wish*** you ***would*** listen carefully.

   我**希望**你仔细听着。（希望你**会**这样去做）

   以上都是属于一般虚拟。动词助动词都用过去式。即使 wish 是过去式 wished，were，could 不变。上列句子内 that 均可省略。

2. wish 较为复杂的结构及概念，是在**否定句**和对**过去情况**的虚拟。

   例　情景：他昨天作的演讲我听不懂（I couldn't understand the speech he gave ***yesterday.***）

   →I ***wish*** I ***could have understood*** his speech.

   ＝***had been able to*** understand...

我真希望能听懂他的演讲。

报考硕士学位研究生还考过这一结构，题目如下：

A) I wish I ________ to the movies with you ***last night***.

A. went　　B. did go

C. could go　　D. have gone

E. could have gone

另外还有类似的对过去情况作虚拟的考题（研究生）：

B) I wish I ________ yesterday.

a. told him not that

b. didn't tell him that

c. had not told him that

d. will tell him that

C) I wish you（注意：这是第二人称）________ talk like that.

a. don't　　b. won't

c. wouldn't　　d. not to

3. 对比一些句子，抓住其概念：

I wish he ***didn't*** ask so many questions.

我但愿他不要问那么多问题。（一般虚拟）

I wish he ***hadn't*** asked so many questions.

我真巴不得（昨天，昨晚等）他不曾提那么多问题。

（指过去情况，因此不是泛泛地指某件事，不是一般虚拟。）

我**真巴不得**你少抽点烟。（这句话不牵涉到过去，是一般虚拟）

I wish you ***didn't*** smoke so much.（正）

I wish you ***hadn't*** smoke so much.（误）

4. if only 也属于虚拟。意思是"要是…该有多好"。

对比下列句子：

If only you ***would*** try a little harder!

你要是更下点劲该有多好！

=I ***wish*** you ***would*** try a little harder.

=***How wonderful it would be if*** you ***would*** try a little harder!

If only I ***could have*** gone to the party!
(指昨天或以前)我能去参加那个聚会该有多好!
=I wish I {***could have*** gone to / ***had been able to*** go to} the party.
=***How nice it would be if*** I ***had been able to*** go to the party!

If only the weather ***would*** change.
天气(第三人称)要是变一变,该有多好。
=I ***wish*** the weather ***would*** change.
=***How I wish*** the weather ***would*** change!

5. 思考下列不同概念:

I wish you didn't spend so much money.
I wish you hadn't spent so much money,

I wish I didn't say anything about it.
I wish I hadn't said anything about it.

6. wish 的一般使用(+to, to be)

He wishes ***to*** talk to me in private.
他希望私下同我谈谈。
I wish the work ***to be*** finished this week.
我希望这项工作能在本周内完成。

【语言材料】

1. form a picture of 有一种看法
2. imagine...to be 把…想像为
3. never have to 永远不必
4. be the opposite 完全相反
5. starve to death 饿死
6. an element of truth 有点道理
7. have the opportunity to 有机会

8. find out　了解
9. load... with　把…装上…
10. hardly any　几乎没有=almost no
11. prove to be　算是
12. have plenty to(eat)　有不少(可吃的)东西
13. put it　所说的
14. be genuinely sorry　确实感到难过
15. had to　不得不

关于 be the opposite，opposite 是名词，相反的事或人，例如：You are nice；he is just the opposite.（你人不错；而他就不一样了。）Black and white are opposites.（黑与白是完全不相同的颜色。）

【习题】

Ⅰ. 完成下列句子：(注意每句是什么时态，wish 后面均省略 that)

1. It ***was*** silly of me not to buy that dress. I wish I ________.（注意 was）
2. You ***are*** making a lot of noise. I wish you ________.
3. It's a pity John's away. If only he ________ here.
4. He ***plays*** the piano so well. I wish I ________.
5. I never studied at all when I ***was*** at school. I wish I ________.
6. I'm sorry I ***mentioned***(提到) it to him. I wish I ________.
7. I ***worry*** about tests(测验). I wish I ________.
8. I ***didn't*** understand the questions. I wish I ________
9. I ***haven't got*** a bicycle. I wish I ________.
10. I ***didn't*** go to the party on Saturday evening. I wish I ________ there.

Ⅱ. 给予正确形式：(除第7题外，其余均属一般虚拟)

1. I wish he ________(pay) more attention to English grammar.
2. I wish you ________(go) at once.
3. I wish the rain ________(stop).
4. I wish you ________(not smoke) too much.

5. I do wish I ________(know) more about politics.

6. I wish we ________(have) more money.

7. I wish I ________(be) at the committee **yesterday**.

8. I wish it ________(be) morning.

9. I wish I ________(be) back home;I don't like this place.

10. If you're not busy this afternoon, I wish you ________(stay) with me for a while.

Ⅲ. 阅读下列短诗，填出 wish 后面那个词：

*The Sad Little Star**

忧愁的小星星

There was once a sad little star.

She was not very bright. That is why she was so sad.

All arround were bright, shining stars.

"Just look at us," they said. "See how bright we are."

The thick white clouds sometimes hid the hills and the sea.

The star wished the clouds(　)higher...

She wanted to hide in the clouds.

从前有一颗忧愁的小星星。

她不是很明亮。这就是为什么她是那样忧愁。

周围的星星都很明亮，银光四射。

"看看我们吧，"他们说。"看看我们有多么明亮。"

厚厚的白云有时把小山和大海遮盖。

小星星真希望这些云朵能再升高一些…

她要躲进那云朵中去。

选译：

a. could have been　　　　b. could

c. were　　　　　　　　　d. had been

---

* 节选自《最新英国初级英语》第一册7页。

58 *A Noble Gangster**

好一个尊贵的匪徒！

would rather (had rather)在表示选择(preference)的一种特殊结构及其概念： I'd rather ***he*** {didn't wait / waited} here.

There was a time when the owners of shops and businesses in Chicago had to pay large sums of money to gangsters in return for "protection". If the money was not paid promptly, the gangsters would quickly put a man out of business by destroying his shop. Obtaining "protection money" is not a modern crime.

有一个时期，芝加哥的店主和商行老板们为了回报所谓的"保护"不得不付出大笔钱给一些匪徒们。要是这笔钱不立即交付，匪徒们就会很快用捣毁商店的办法叫人做不成生意。收取"保护费"不是一种现代的罪恶勾当。

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第3册第14课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(中)第39页。

As long ago as the fourteenth century, an Englishman, Sir John Hawkwood, made the remarkable discovery that people ***would rather*** pay large sums of money ***than*** have their life work destroyed by gangsters.
早在十四世纪以前，有一个叫约翰·霍克伍德爵士的英国人就作出了非凡的发现，那就是人们宁愿交付大笔金钱也不愿意把他们的毕生事业被匪徒们毁于一旦。
Six hundred years ago, Sir John Hawkwood arrived in Italy with a band of soldiers and settled near Florence. He soon made a name for himself and came to be known to the Italians as Giovanni Acuto . Whenever the Italian city-states were at war with each other, Hawkwood ***used to*** hire his soldiers to princes who were willing to pay the high price he demanded. In times of peace, when business was bad, Hawkwood and his men ***would*** march into a city-state and, after burning down a few farms , ***would*** offer to go away if protection money was paid to them.
六百年前，约翰·霍克伍德爵士带着一帮大兵来到意大利，并在佛罗伦萨附近安营扎寨。他很快就出了名，那时的意大利人都管他叫吉奥凡尼·阿库杜。不论何时只要意大利的城邦之间发生战争，阿库杜**总是**把他的大兵租借给那些愿意付给他所索要的高价的王子们。在和平时期，当生意清淡时，霍克伍德**总是**带着他手下的人开进某个城邦，放火焚烧一些农场后，**总是**说他们愿意主动离开如果付给他们一笔保护费的话。
Hawkwood made large sums of money in this way. In spite of this, the Italians regarded him as a sort of hero. When he died at the age of eighty, the Florentines gave him a state funeral and had a picture painted which was dedicated to the memory of "the most valiant soldier and most notable leader, Signor Giovanni Haukodue".

这样，霍克伍德捞到了大笔金钱。尽管如此，意大利人还把他看成是某种英雄人物。当他在八十岁那年死去时，佛罗伦萨人给他举行了国葬，并且画了像以纪念“这位最英勇的战士和最显要的领导人吉奥凡尼·霍库杜先生”。

【讲解】

1. would {sooner / rather} ＋动词原形…than＋动词原形，是表示宁愿…而不愿的句型。这个句型的内涵比较明白，结构也并不复杂。

例

I'd ***rather*** read a novel ***than*** a poem.（肯定句）

我宁愿读小说，不要读诗歌（动词 read 可省略）。

I'd rather ***not*** read a poem.（否定句）

我可不愿读诗歌。（不用 I'd not rather）

would you rather meet her here ***than*** write her a letter?（疑问句）

你宁愿在这儿见她而不愿写信给她，是吗？

上面三句用 prefer（to）也可表达相同内涵：

1） I ***prefer to*** read a novel ***rather than*** a poem.

2） I ***prefer not to*** read a poem.

3） Do you ***prefer*** meeting her here ***to*** writing her a letter?

2. 若要表达过去怎么办？如：“昨天晚上我倒是很想去（宁可去）看戏的。”（而事实上却因为有其它事而没有去）

例 I'd rather [have gone] to the theatre last night.

模式：would rather＋[have＋过去分词]

3. 第三种 would rather 是跟从句的，这一种比较复杂。从句中的谓语动词用虚拟语气。

例 I'd rather (that) ***he*** waited here.

我宁愿他在这里等着。（用代词主格 he）

＝I'd prefer ***him*** to wait here（用代词宾格 him）

=I'd prefer it if he waited here.

=It would be better if he waited here.

例 I'd rather (that) he ***didn't*** wait here.

我宁愿他别在这里等着。(不用 don't)

=I'd prefer him ***not to*** wait here.

=I'd prefer it if he ***didn't*** wait here.

=It would be better if he ***didn't*** wait here.

4. 另有三种 would rather 的相同概念,就是 would just as soon...as, would as soon...as, would sooner...than.

   例 He ***would rather*** lose a game ***than*** play it unfairly.

   他宁愿比赛失败,也不愿作弊取胜。

   =He ***would just as soon*** lose a game ***as*** play it unfairly.

   =He ***would as soon*** lose a game ***as*** play it unfairly.

   =He ***would sooner*** lose a game ***than*** play it unfairly.

5. 要求:要求学生熟悉上述1, 3两点,其余2,4 作为参考,不作进一步要求。

   在一般高考中,第1 小点所述的 would rather+动词原形是其重点。第3小点所述,属于研究生考试范围。而2, 3,4小点所述,属于托福考试范围。

6. 辨异:would rather,也可作 had rather(美国人常用),或 would sooner,后面否定部分均用 than,只有用 soon 的时候,其否定部分用 as。

7. 若 would rather 后接形容词,应加 be.

   例 I would rather ***be*** deaf than blind.

   我宁愿聋不愿瞎。

【语言材料】

1. there was a time when 有一个时期
2. large sums of 大笔的(或 a large sum of 一大笔)
3. in return for 作为…回报

4. put *sb* out of business　叫人无法营业
5. as long ago as　远在，早在
6. have...destroyed　使役结构，使…毁于一旦
7. a band of　一伙，一帮
8. make a name for oneself　出名
9. be known to *sb*. as　某人管叫某某人为…

例　He is known to us students as General Wang.
我们学生都管他叫王大将军。

10. come to be known　=become well-known，变得人所共知
11. be at war　交战（状态）
12. used to　总是（后面可用 would，would often 代用 used to）
13. be willing to　情愿
14. in times of　在…时期
15. march into　部队开进
16. burn down　烧毁
17. offer to　主动提出愿意…
18. make money：　赚钱，发财
19. in this way　这样，以这种方式
20. in spite of　尽管
21. regard *sb* as　把某人视为
22. at the age of　在…那一年岁
23. state funeral　国葬
24. be dedicated to the memory of　以志纪念
25. have...painted　使役结构。

关于 a sort of　是指"某种类型的"，但说不清是什么具体类型。这个词组相当于 a kind of 。

【习题】

完成下列句子（有的给予必要的词，有的由你自己填）：

1. I would just as soon stay at home ________ go.
2. He would rather resign(辞职) ________ take part in such dishonest business(不正当勾当).
3. I would rather ________(alive)than dead.
4. He would sooner die ________ consent(同意)to such a plan.
5. I would rather you ________(come) tomorrow than today.
6. I would sooner they ________(remain 留下)here.
7. "Would you rather take a taxi?"
   "No, I'd sooner ________(walk)."
8. I'd rather we ________(stop) now.
9. He said he would rather not ________(do) it right now.
10. Would you rather rent(租用) the house ________ buy it?
11. I'd rather she ________(not,do) anything about it for the time being(暂时).
12. He would rather ________(live) in the country than in the city.
13. I'd rather ________(go) to the party the day before yesterday.
14. I'd prefer it if they ________(not,do) it.
15. I prefer not to wait here=I would ________.
16. I prefer her not to go there=I would ________.
17. I prefer her to do more reading=I would ________.
18. We'd rather have gone to the movies last night = We'd prefer ________.
19. Which would you rather have , tea of coffee? = Which do you ________, tea of coffee?
20. I can't write properly with your pen; I'd ________(use) my own.

59 *Mary Had a Little Lamb*[*]

染 羊 记

had better 在表示“得当，可取”(advisability)的6种不同结构：	
1. you had better	4. you better
2. you had better not	5. better＋动词原形
3. hadn't you better...?	6. you'd better have＋过去分词

Mary and her husband Dimitri lived in the tiny village of Perachora in southern Greece. One of Mary's prize possessions was a little white lamb which her husband had given her. She kept it tied to a tree in a field during the day and went to fetch it every evening. One evening, however, the lamb was missing. The rope had been cut, so it was obvious that the lamb had been stolen.

玛丽和她的丈夫迪米屈里住在希腊南部的一个名叫珀拉科拉的小村子里。玛丽的珍贵财产之一就是她丈夫给她的一只小白羊，她在白天把羊栓在田里的一棵树上，晚上就跑去把它牵回来。可是，一天晚上，

---

* 选自《新概念英语》第3册第16课。

参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(中)第46页。

小羊失踪了，绳子已被割断。显然小羊被人偷走了。

When Dimitri came in from the fields, his wife told him what had happened. Dimitri at once set out to find the thief. He knew it would not prove difficult in such a small village. After telling several of his friends about the theft, Dimitri found out that his neighbour, Aleko, had suddenly acquired a new lamb.

当迪米屈里从田里回来时，他的妻子把已经发生的事告诉了他。迪米屈里立刻着手去找这个偷羊贼，他知道在这个小小的村庄里是不难找到的。在给他的几个朋友讲了这桩偷窃案之后，迪米屈里发现他的邻居阿莱科突然新到手一只羊。

Dimitri immediately went to Aleko's house and angrily accused him of stealing the lamb. He told him he ***had better*** return it or he would call the police. Aleko denied taking it and led Dimitri into his back-yard. It was true that he had just bought a lamb, he explained, but ***his*** lamb was black.

迪米屈里立刻跑到阿莱科家里，怒气冲冲地指责他偷小羊的事。他对他说最好把羊还给他要不然他就要去叫警察了。阿莱科一口否认偷羊的事并把迪米屈里领到他的后院里。他解释道，他确实买了一头羊，不过"他的"羊是黑色的。

Ashamed of having acted so rashly, Dimitri apologized to Aleko for having accused him. While they were talking it be-

gan to rain and Dimitri stayed in Aleko's house until the rain stopped. When he went outside half an hour later, he was astonished to find that the little black lamb was almost white. Its wool, which had been dyed black, had been washed clean by the rain!

由于做事莽撞而而感到羞愧，迪米屈里为自己的错误指责向阿莱科道歉。正当他们在谈话时，天开始下雨了，迪米屈里因此就呆在阿莱科家里直到雨停。当他在半小时后走到外边时，他惊奇地发现那只小黑羊几乎全身都是白色的了，一度曾被染黑了的毛已被雨水冲洗得干干净净！

【讲解】

1. 本课专题讨论 had better 的几种结构及其概念。首先讲 had better 是带有某种个人看法的一种劝解，虽然有“最好”的意思但多少带有命令口气，因此对师长，长辈等似乎不宜使用，不如说：“It would be advisable (better) for you to..., I suggest that you (should)...

2. You had better do it.

   你最好做那件事。

   =It would be better for you to do it.

   =It would be advisable(可取)for you to do it.

   =you better do it. (口语形式)

   =Better do it, John. (口语形式)

3. 否定式：You had better ***not*** do it. (不用 hadn't better)

   你最好不要去做它。

   =It wouldn't be advisable for you to do it.

4. 疑问式：***Hadn't*** you ***better*** do it? (也可用 Had you not better)

你做这件事不好吗？

Hadn't you better hurry if you want to get the eight o'clock train?

如果你要乘八点钟的火车，你抓紧点不好吗？

Hadn't we better wait until he comes?

我们等到他来不好吗？

5. had better 的过去式：had better＋ have＋过去分词

You had better ***have done*** it.

你要是（在昨天，前天）做了这件事那就好了。

You had better ***have gone*** already.

你若早已去了，倒是好些。（指过去时间）

6. 在现代英语中，很少有人用 had best，但不算是错的，不过已不大通用，这种说法被认为是俗气。

had better 可以跟 be＋ing，表示"眼下""现在"。

例 I suppose I had better be going.

我想我最好现在就走。

【语言材料】

1. keep it tied to　把它栓在
2. be missing　不见，失踪
3. it is obvious that　很明显…
4. set out to　着手
5. prove difficult　prove 起 link-*v*（连系动词）作用
6. accuse *sb.* of　指责某人关于…
7. deny＋ing　deny 后接动名词，表示否认干过什么事
8. it is true that　不假，确实
9. be ashamed of　因…而感到惭愧
10. he was astonished to find that　＝he found to his astonish-

ment，他惊奇地发现…

11. be washed clean　被冲洗干净，clean 是副词

本课有一些动名词结构，这在前几课中我们都已学过，注意下列表达：

Aleko denied ***taking*** it.（在功能动词 deny 之后）

Ashamed ***of having*** acted...（作介词 of 的宾语）

apologized ***for having*** accused...（作介词 for 的宾语）

prove 常和形容词连用，起连系动词作用，如：

His story proved（＝was）false.

他的故事证明是假的。

This article has proved most useful.

这篇文章业经证明非常有用。

【习题】

翻译下列句子：

1. 你昨天晚上去看戏就好了。
2. 我们等到雨停不好吗？
3. 你最好告诉你的学生不要过多使用（overuse）"had best"。
4. Since you have decided to go, ____________________.（还是早走为好）
5. 你赶快些（hurry up）不好吗？天快黑了。
6. 这件事你最好自己做。你昨天把它做成了就好了。
7. 你最好今晚呆在家里读书。
8. 我今晚宁愿在家里读书。
9. 你最好把你的头发去理一理。
10. 我们在会议开始前把计划讨论一下不好吗？

60　*A Trip to Mars**

到火星去旅行

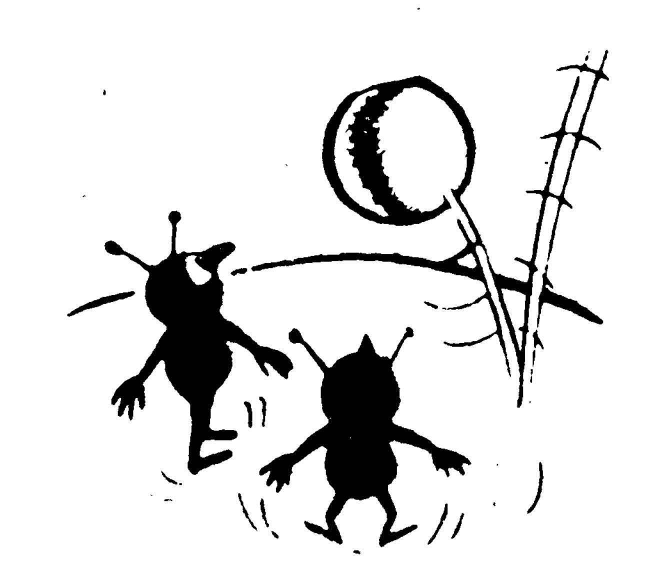
1. 重要概念英汉文字对比(详见课文译文)

   英语连字 before 的字面**涵义**及其句法**概念**专论

   it will be ***a long time*** before…
   it won't be ***long*** before…
   it wasn't ***long*** before…
   it was ***a long time*** before…
   } 动词用什么时态?

2. Only when…will this be possible 的非倒装句式是怎样的?其时间概念是什么?

By now, a rocket ***will have*** set off on its 35 million mile trip to Mars and scientists ***must be*** waiting anxiously for the results. The rocket ***will be travelling*** for six months ***before*** it reaches the planet.



---

* 选自《新概念英语》第3册第9课。
参阅《新概念英语阅读手册》(中)第25页。

It contains a number of scientific instruments, including a television camera.

此刻(内含到此刻之**前**的一段时间),一枚火箭**可能已经**发出,进行它的飞往火星的三千五百万英里的旅行,科学家们(现在)**说不定**(must be)正在焦急地期待着它的结果。这枚火箭准备**飞行**(will be +ing)六个月**之后**(before)**才**到达该行星。它装载着若干科学仪器,包括一架电视摄像机。

Any pictures that are taken ***will have to*** travel for three minutes ***before*** they reach the earth. ***If*** the pictures ***are*** successful, they ***may*** solve a number of problems about Mars and provide information about the markings on its surface which, nearly 100 years ago, the astronomer, Schiaparelli, thought to be canals.

所拍摄下来的任何图像**还得要**传送三分钟时间**之后才**能到达地球。**只要**图像拍得成功,这些图像**就可以**解决许多有关火星的问题并提供关于火星表面上的条痕的资料,至于这些条痕,大约在一百年之前,天文学家希阿帕雷里曾把它们看成为运河。

It will be a long time before any landing on Mars ***can*** be attempted. This will ***only*** be possible ***when*** scientists have learnt a lot more about the atmosphere that surrounds the planet. ***If*** a satellite ***can*** one day be put into orbit round Mars, scientists ***will be able to*** find out a great deal. An interesting suggestion for measuring the atmosphere around Mars has been put forward. A rubber ball containing a radio transmitter could be dropped from a satellite ***so that it would*** fall towards the surface of the planet.

要做到在火星上着陆还要经过相当长的时间**之后**(before)**方能**实现。**只有当**科学家们掌握了更多的关于火星周围大气层的情况**之后才**有可能。**只要**一旦有一枚人造卫星被发射到围绕火星的轨道上去,科学家们**就有可能**了解到更多的情况。有人已经提出了一项测定火

星周围大气层的有趣的建议。可以把一个装有无线电发报机的橡皮球从人造卫星上扔下来**目的使**它向该行星(火星)的表面上坠落。(注意 would 的使用,是虚拟语气,表示若这项建议能实施的话就会…)

The radio would signal the rate at which the ball was slowed down and scientists ***would be able to*** calculate how dense the atmosphere is. It may even be possible to drop a capsule containing scientific instruments on to the planet's surface. ***Only when*** a great deal more information ***has*** been obtained, ***will it be*** possible to plan a manned trip to Mars.

无线电发报机会**发**出讯号,显示橡皮球的减速率,由此,科学家们**就会有可能**计算出大气层的密度。它甚至还有可能把一个装有科学仪器的太空舱(capsule)扔到该行星的表面上去。**只有当**更为大量的信息被人们所取得**之后**,**才**有可能计划一次去火星的载人之行。

【讲解】

1. **先讲本课第一个句型:**

it will be [a long time] before+主语, [谓语]

(a long time: **可以换**months, five years**等**; 谓语: 用动词及助动词简单式)

例 [It will be] ***ten years*** [before] we ***meet*** again.

要十年之**后**我们才会再见面。(不用 will meet)

It won't be very ***long before*** you ***can*** master it.

不要多久你就能掌握它。(不用 would be able to)

2. 第二个句型:

It was not long before+主语, [谓语]

(It was not long before: 不久(指过去); 谓语: 用动词简单过去式)

例 It wasn't long before he ***told*** me about his affair.

不久他就告诉我关于他个人的事。(不用 had told)

It was not long before he ***came.***

不久他来了。(不用 had come)

钱歌川先生认为"before 不要译出"。又说"这个连词的 before,

不可只照字面译为[以前]，…甚至译成相反的意思，或根本不去理它。…不可死抱着英文原文的意思不放。"（《翻译的技巧》）

钱先生的见解是高明的，他是撇开单词 before 的字面意思来阐述句法中的概念，有他的理解高度。

3. 第三个句型：

it was a long time before＋主语， 谓语

（it was a long time before：过了很长时间之后；谓语：用动词及助动词简单过去式）

例 It was a long time before I ***got to*** sleep again.

过了很久**以后**我才再次入睡。

It was ***a week*** before he ***could*** tell his experience.

过了一星期**之后**他才告诉人们他的遭遇。

（例如恢复了记忆等）

注意：只有用 a long time 的句型中才能用其他表数字的时间换用。long，不能换用 a long time.

4. 第四个句型：

Only when（＋完成式）will it be possible

（will it be：倒装）

＝It will ***only*** be possible ***when***＋（完成式）

例 ***Only when*** capitalism ***has been*** abolished ***will it be*** possible to abolish poverty, unemployment and war.

只有当资本主义被消灭**之后**才有可能消灭贫穷，失业和战争。

——→***It will only be*** possible to abolish poverty, unemployment and war ***when*** capitalism ***has been*** abolished.

Only when a greal deal more information has been obtained ***will it be*** possible to plan a manned trip to Mars.

——→***It will only*** be possible to plan a manned trip to Mars ***when*** a great deal more information has been obtained.

只有当更为大量的信息被人们所取得**之后**，**才**有可能计划一次去火星

的载人之行。

This ***will only*** be possible ***when*** scientists have learnt a lot more about the atmosphere that surrounds the planet.

——→***Only when*** scientists have learnt a lot more about the atmoephere that surrounds the planet ***will this be*** possible.

只有当科学家们掌握了更多的关于火星周围大气层的情况**之后才**有可能。

总结：1)本课若干句型中的 before 和 when 都有(表示**未来**)"**之后**"**的概念。不能孤立地解释单词。**

2)only when 和 only after, only then 的倒装句**时间概念截然不同**,不能混为一谈。如：

Only after a bitter struggle ***was*** the aim achieved.
只是在经过一场艰苦的斗争**之后**我们才达到了目的。
(这是指过去发生的事)

Only then did I realize the importance of maths.
只是在**那时**,我方才认识到数学的重要性。
(这也是指过去发生的事)

【语言材料】

1. by now　在此刻以前一段时间
2. will have　可能已经
3. must be waiting　说不定在等待着
4. will be travelling　打算,准备传送
5. a number of　若干
6. be taken　take 指拍照的"拍"
7. think...to be　把…认为是
8. it will be a long time before　时间还相当遥远,还得很长时间之后
9. be attempted　能办到,能做到
10. a lot more　=a grent deal more,更多的
11. be put into orbit　纳入规道

12. a great deal 作为名词词组，是很多情况的意思

13. be put forward 被提出

14. so that it would 以便使…目的使…

15. be slowed down 被减速

16. the rate at which… at which＝“的”，为什么用 at，因为这个介词与 rate 有关。如：at the rate of，The train goes at the rate of 30 miles an hour. 火车的速度是每小时三十英里＝The rate ***at which*** the train goes is 30 miles an hour.（定语从句结构）

【习题】

选择填空

( ) 1. It ________ possible to plan a manned trip to Mars, provided that (＝if) a great deal more information is obtained.

a. ought to be　　b. must be

c. would have been　　d. can only be

( ) 2. The picture will take three weeks ________ to the earth.

a. to travel　　b. on travelling

c. of travel　　d. with travelling

( ) 3. We ________ for the bus for over an hour before it arrived.

a. must be waiting　　b. must have been waiting

c. should have waited　　d. ought to have waited

( ) 4. Alice is upstairs. She ________ her homework.

a. must be doing　　b. must have been doing

c. must doing　　d. must perhaps doing

( ) 5. It ________ a week before he was fit for work.

a. will be　　b. won't be

c. was　　d. It wasn't be

( ) 6. I hadn't waited long ________ he came.

a. when　　b. before

c. until　　d. after

( ) 7. It wasn't ________ before she plunged herself into the icy water.

a. a long time　　b. for long

c. long　　d. so a long time

( ) 8. Well, it won't be ________ before you are of age(成年).

a. very long　　b. a long time

c. much longer　　d. such long time

( ) 9. It will be ________ before we ________ again.

a. not long…met　　b. so long…will meet

c. long…can cooperate　　d. months…meet

( ) 10. Only when you have learnt a great deal more about the English language ________ write a good composition.

a. it will be possible　　b. will you be possible to

c. will you be able to　　d. you can

( ) 11. "Look! the horse is going at a great rate!"

"Yes, I see, I think the rate ________ the horse is going must be five miles an hour。"

a. by which　　b. at which

c. with which　　d. to which

( ) 12. The angle(角度) ________ you view the present situation is extraordinarily similar to that of mine. (你看当前形势的角度和我的极为相似)

a. by which　　b. at which

c. with which　　d. to which

( ) 13. I don't think they are ________ the almost impossible. (我并不认为他们想做几乎做不到的事)

a. attempting　　b. attempting to

c. attempt　　d. to attempting

( ) 14. We must ________ the country's entire economy ________ the orbit of planned(有计划的) proportionate(成比例的) and high-speed socialist development.

a. put…into　　b. put…forward

c. think…to be   d. attempt…into

( ) 15. It ________ we attempt a landing on Mars, but it ________ we ________ the top of this hill.

a. won't be long before…will be long…will reach

b. will be a long time before…will not be long before…will reach

c. will take some time before…willn't be long…reach

d. will be a long time before…will not be long before…reach

Ⅲ.《新概念英语》第2,3册重要句型及表达法精选30例

1. ***All that glitters is not gold.*** (第二册140页,页码均按原版书)

   不见得所有发光的东西都是金子。(部分否定)

   all = 不见得,并非所有的东西,is not = 都是。句型

   All…is not…
Not all…is…

   例 All the answers are not right.

   并非所有的答案都是对的。(否定词 not 后移)

   =Not all the answers are right. (否定词 not 前置)

   对比:None are correct answers. (哪条答案都不对。)这是全部否定。

2. ***The crystal palace was different from all other buildings in the world.*** (第二册199页)

   水晶宫不同于世界上所有别的建筑物。

   all other buildings=any other building。同类相比,不能说 all buildings, any building,因为它们把本身也包括进去了,无从形成对比,故必须分别加入 other,以示与所有别的相比。any other+单数名词,all other+复数名词。

3. ***It was one of the biggest buildings of all time…*** (第二册199页)

   它是有史以来最大的建筑物之一。

   It remained one of the most famous buildings in the world…

它仍然是世界上最著名的建筑物之一。

在表示最高级形容词所形容的对象是最高之一时，往往与 of all 连用，或用 in.

例 Lincoln was one of the greatest of all American presidents.

林肯是所有美国总统中最伟大的总统之一。

Tokyo is one of the biggest cities in the world.

东京是世界上最大的城市之一。

4. ***University students set the Embassy on fire this morning.*** (第二册229页)

大学生们在今天早晨放火焚烧了大使馆。

放火烧什么房子的句型：{ set＋房子＋on fire
set fire to＋房子 }

失火的句型：A fire broke out ***in*** the Embassy.

The Embassy broke out a fire.（错）地点作主语不能使用 break out，但可以说 The Embassy was on fire.

5. ***this one must have been in the possession of a private collector and somehow managed to escape.*** (第三册12页)

这只（美洲狮）谅必属于私人收藏者所有，也不知怎么搞的它竟然成功地逃了出来。

be in the possession of 不同于 be in possession of.

例 The building is in the possession of Mike.

这所建筑物为迈克所有。

＝Mike is in possession of the building.

但，Mike is in the possession of the building 就是错句。

6. ***Why are you wasting time? You could be finishing your work.*** （第三册29页）

你为什么浪费时间呢？你（现在）可以把你的工作做完。

could be＋ing 指（现在）可以…，为“情态动词＋be＋ing”句

型。

例 You should be wearing a mask.

你(现在)应带一只口罩么。

He can't be working all day.

他不见得整天在干活。(指现在)

I wish it wasn't raining; we could be playing tennis.

我真希望天不下雨才好呢,我们(现在)可以打网球。

7. ***He was greeted by an unpleasant smell...***(第三册32页)

他闻到一股难闻的气味…

greet 指接触于眼,耳,鼻三方面的色,声,味。

例 The sight of war greeted me＝I was greeted by the sight of war.

我见到了战争的硝烟弥漫的景象。(色)

The strains greeted me.

我听到了悠扬的乐声。(声)

A sweet smell greeted me.

一阵清香向我袭来。(味)

8. ***My nephew George, has a money-box but it is always empty. Very few of the sixpences I have given him have found their way there.*** (第三册40页)

我的侄儿乔治有一个储蓄罐,但总是空空如也。我给他的一些六便士硬币就很少到那里去过。

find one's way to＋名词, find one's way＋副词 是两个相同的句型,指到…去。

例 Who could have found his way to the attic?

谁会到阁楼里去过呢?

Nobody has found his way there.

没有人到那里去过。

9. ***The use of gloves was not introduced until*** 1860. (第三册60页)

直到1860年才引进拳击手套的使用。

not...until 是一个重要句型。注意它的倒装句模式。上述一句可以写成:Not until 1860 ***was*** the use of gloves introduced. 或 It was not until 1860 ***that*** the use of gloves was introduced.(it was...that 为强调句)

10. 1) ***The idea never appealed to me very much.***

2) ***I did not fancy the idea.***(第三册64页)

1) 这种想法从来就对我不发生兴趣(不投我所好,对我没有吸引力)

2) 我不喜欢这种想法。

appeal to 不能以人作为主语。句型是:物+***appeal to***+人

例 ***This book doesn't appeal to children.***

这本书孩子们觉得没有兴趣。

Does she say anything that appeals to you especially?

他讲了什么特别使你感到有兴趣的话了吗?

以人作主语,对什么表示喜欢,可以使用 ***fancy.***

例 ***I fancy the idea of having a picnic.***

我喜欢吃野餐这个主意。

He's not at all the kind of man I fancy.

他压根不是我所喜欢的那种人。

所以,***The job rather appeals to me.***(我相当喜欢这工作)

=***I fancy the job*** { ***to a degree.*** / ***very much.*** }

11. ***They devise hundreds of competitions which will enable us to win huge sums of money.***(第三册70页)

他们设计出成百种能使我们得到巨额款项的竞赛。

enable...to, =make it possible for...to...,使…能够(被)…

例 This train will ***enable*** me ***to*** get there in time.

这班列车能使我及时到达那里。

=This train will ***make it possible for me to*** get there in time.

例 The microscope ***enables*** small objects ***to be*** obsered.

显微镜能使微小的物体被观察到。

=The microscope ***makes it possible for small objects to be*** observed.

把下列句子用 enable...to 改写：

Radio and television have made it possible for advertisers to capture the attention of millions of people in this way.

广播和电视已经使做广告的人有可能以这种方式吸引千百万人的注意。

——→Radio and television have enabled advertisers to capture the attention of millions of people in this way.

12. ...they bought the biscuit from the student for ＄4,800.（第三册70页）

他们花了4,800美元从那位学生那里买下那块饼干。

注意数字前面的 for，往往是指花多少钱。pay...for＋物，是指花多少钱买什么东西，注意下面句型：

They ***bought*** the biscuit from the student ***at the price of*** ＄4,800.
They ***paid*** the student ＄4,800 ***for*** the biscuit.

例 Skills have to be paid for.

技术是要花钱去买的。

不能说 Skills have to be paid.（paid 后面要接人，款项等）

13. ...the man drank a little more than was good (for him).（第三册76页）

此人酒喝得有点过量。

more than is ＋(形容词)句型 不能照字面硬译，more than 以后的文句，英文虽是肯定，但往往是否定的意思。

more than was good，是说超过了适当的程度，即不适当，过量。

例 He spoke (a little) more than was necessary.

他讲话有点噜嗦。

more than was necessary 是指超过了必要的程度，即不必要，多余，噜嗦。

14. ***This invariably wins them the love and respect of others，...***（第三册80页）

这种行为常常为他们赢得别人的爱戴和尊敬。

不是：这种行为常常使他们热爱和尊敬别人。

win＋代词宾格＋the...of

句型：

例 She has a nature that invariably ***wins her*** the friendship of her colleaques.

她具有一种天性，这种天性常常为她赢得同事们的友谊。

15. ***From this the captain was able to piece together all the information that had come to light.***（第三册82页）

由此，船长可以把所有已经被发现的资料综合起来。

这里要讲的是 come to light＝被人发现。

这个表达不能用在被动语态中，但有被动的内涵。

例 Since the trial, further evidence has come to light.（不能用 has been come to light）

自从审问以来，更多的证据已被人发现。

His talent for music came to light.

他的音乐天才被人所发现。

16. ...he could not be bothered to open it.（第三册86页）

他讨厌（不高兴）把它打开。

cannot be bothered to...

句型＝dislike doing *sth.*

这是一个明显的被动态，但没有被动意思。

例 I cannot be bothered to wait for a bus, let's walk.

我不喜欢等公共汽车，我们走走吧。

=I cannot be bothered with waiting for a bus, let's walk.

17. ***Hans explained how it was that he was still alive.*** (第三册90页)

汉斯解释了他怎么会仍然活着。

例: how it was that 在这里是宾语从句,而其疑问句是 how was it that…(怎么会)

例 How is it that you are always behind time?

你怎么老是迟到?(怎么会这样?)

=How come you are always behind time?

例 How come he made such a blunder?

他怎么会犯这种错误呢?

=How was it that he made such a blunder?

18. ***At the time, this did not strike me as odd.*** (第三册92页)

当时,这件事并不使我感到很怪。

strike sb as:使人有…的感觉。

=seem to sb to be… (to sb 是插入语)

例 How does the idea strike you?

这想法你感觉怎样?

It seems to me to be rather queer.

我感觉很怪。

=It strikes me as rather queer.

19. ***It suddenly dawned on me that…*** (第三册92页)

我突然明白过来…

it suddenly dawned ***on*** me that…

it suddenly occurred ***to*** me that…

上面两句是常用句型,第一句是说我突然明白过来,第二句是说我突然想到…(介词都不同)。

例 It suddenly dawned on me that the two of them were

brothers.

我突然明白过来他俩原来是兄弟。

It suddenly occurred to me that I had seen her before somewhere.

我突然想起我以前在什么地方见过她。

20. ***Even seemingly insignificant remains can shed interesting light on the history of early man.*** (第三册94页)

甚至表面看来无足轻重的遗物也能趣味盎然地**使人了解**人类早期的历史情况。

shed(cast, throw,show,turn)light on＝使人了解,阐明。

例 His diary can shed light on life in England in the seventeenth century.

他的日记可以使人了解17世纪的英格兰的生活情况。

＝His diary can ***make clear*** life in England in the seventeeth century.

21. ...They wonder whether they will ever catch that last train home. (第三册106页)

他们担心是否还会赶上最后一班火车回家。

一般句型 wonder whether...will ever...

特殊句型 wonder whether...will not...

例 They wonder whether they will ***not*** catch that last train home.

他们认为会搭上最后一班火车回家的。(深信无疑)

22. ...it was almost impossible to attach hawsers and chains to the rim without damaging it. (第三册110页)

要在盘子的边沿上系上绳索和铁链必然会引起损伤。

句型：否定(如 impossible, cannot)＋without,双重否定句型＝不可能不,必然要…

例 Sound waves cannot travel very fast without striking

any trees.

声波传递非常迅速，必然要碰到树。

You cannot speak without moving your lips.

你要讲话必然要动嘴唇。

23. ***We had no idea how we could get across he stream.*** (第三册120页)

我们不知道怎样才能越过这条溪流。

★ have no idea 可以接 of，也可以不接 of(指从句)。

例 You have no idea(of) how anxious *we* have been.

你不知道我们一直有多么焦急。

★ 凡是跟连接代词，或连接副词的不定式结构，不用 of。

例 I had no idea ***what to*** say to him. (what to 连接代词的不定式结构)

I had no idea ***how to*** do it. (how to 连接副词的不定式结构)

另外还有 where to, which to, when to 等。(注意不要用 why to，没有这种表达法，只能说 why one should...)

24 ***Computers are capable of doing extremely complicated work in all branches of learning.*** (第三册126页)

计算机能从事专业知识各个领域的极为复杂的工作。

这里要谈的就是一个词——计算机。这个词要严格按照下列规定书写：

1) the computer (单数加定冠词)

2) computers (复数无冠词)

3) a computer (单数加不定冠词)

★ computer (这样写，既无冠词，也无复数形式是不合习惯的)

25. ***Computers are the most efficient servants man has ever had.*** (第三册126页)

计算机是人类所拥有过的最有效率的仆人。(也可译为：计算机

是人类从未有过的最有效率的仆人。)

=Man has never had such effecient servants as computers.

句型：{the most (最高级形容词)…+have ever had.
have never had such+形容词…as…

26. ***The fact [that the policeman was prejudiced against foreigners] could not be recorded in the official files.*** (第三册130页)

警察歧视外国人这件事不可能记录在官方的卷宗中。

用[ ]表示的是一个同位语从句，进一步说明 fact(这件事)的内容。be prejudiced against 是对…歧视，prejudiced 作为形容词使用。这种同位语从句可以写成以下格式：

The policeman's prejudice(名词) against foreigners could not be recorded in the official file.

例 The fact that John was dead made no particular difference to Mary.

约翰去世这件事对于玛丽来说无关痛痒。

——→ John's death made no particular difference to Mary.

27. …it may take a great many years before results are obtained. (第三册134页)

可能还要过很多很多年之后才能获得结果。

凡是表达"还要多少时间之后才…"，其句型如下：

{it may take…before+一般式动词(不用 will)
it will be a long time before+一般式动词(不用 will)

例 {It may take twenty years before they finish building the bridge.
It will be twenty years before they meet again.

28. ***We are lucky in that only the lower fields***…are affected by flooding. (第三册136页)

我们之所以幸运是因为只有低洼的田地受到洪水影响。“之所以，是因为”常用 in that 表达，in that＝because.

例 English is useful in that it enables us to know the world better.

英语之所以有用是因为它使我们能够更好地了解世界。

I like the country better in that I have more friends in the country.

我之所以更爱乡间是因为我在乡下有更多的朋友。

29. ***I had come ten miles since leaving the town.***（第三册138页）

自从离开那座城填之后，我已走了十英里。

since 作为介词，可以后接动名词 ing 形式。上面那句话可以写为…since I left the town（since 作为连词）

例 Mike has worked hard since（介词）leaving school.

＝Mike has worked hard since（连词）he left school.

例 Since her coming to Shanghai she hasn't been well.

＝She hasn't been well since she came to Shanghai.

30. ***Over the years one may well become an authority on one's hobby...***（第三册142页）

若干年里，这个人很可能就会成为某种业余爱好的权威…

may well 不是“会很好地”，而是“很可能”＝be quite likely that…。may well 为副词词组。

例 You may well not recognize her.

你很可能不会认出她来。

＝It is very likely that you will not recognize her.（本句 likely 为形容词）

＝Very likely, you will not recognize her.（本句 likely 为副词）

习题答案

1

1. c 2. b 3. c 4. b 5. a 6. d
7. d 8. d 9. c 10. c

2

Ⅰ. 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. ✓ 5. ✓ 6. ✓
7. × 8. × 9. × 10. ×

Ⅱ. 1. d 2. d 3. b 4. a 5. d 6. d
7. d 8. a 9. a 10. b

3

Ⅰ. 1. He is always talking about television programmes.
2. He is always boasting about his garden.
3. He is always making silly remarks.
4. she is always ringing me up.
5. Our car is always breaking down.

6. She is always losing her wallets.

Ⅱ. 1. He is always being punished.

2. You are always catching colds.

3. You are always making mistakes.

4. She is always writing letters.

5. This pen is always running out.

Ⅲ. 1. d　2. b　3. d　4. c　5. c　6. d
7. a　8. c　9. c　10. c

4

Ⅰ. 1. wrote　2. bought, did he buy　3. did he spend
4. hit　5. he sent　6. opened, shut　7. visited
8. finished　9. started　10. wasn't　11. wrote
12. drove, arrived　13. arrived　14. died
15. Did you review　16. made　17. left
18. paid　19. lived　20. began

Ⅱ. 1. c　2. c　3. b　4. b　5. d　6. d
7. d　8. b　9. b　10. d　11. d　12. c
13. a　14. d　15. c　16. d　17. b　18. c　19. a　20. d

5

1. a　2. d　3. b　4. b　5. c　6. a
7. b　8. d　9. a　10. b

6

1. d　2. b　3. a　4. a　5. b　6. b

7. b   8. d   9. a   10. b

7

Ⅰ. 1. was walking 2. dropped, was speaking 3. was working, was sitting 4. was getting, hurt 5. knocked, was getting 6. was watering 7. was happening 8. were you doing 9. was 10. had

Ⅱ. 1. a 2. b 3. a 4. d 5. a 6. b
7. b 8. d 9. b 10. d

Ⅲ. 1. × 2. √

8

Ⅰ. 1. b 2. a 3. d 4. d 5. a 6. c
7. c 8. c 9. b 10. a 11. c 12. d
13. a 14. b 15. b

Ⅱ. would often, would(say), would(secretly)

9

1. c 2. d 3. d 4. a 5. b 6. a
7. b 8. c 9. c 10. b 11. d 12. a
13. a 14. a 15. a 16. b 17. d 18. b (set off 指已出发＝started one's journey) 19. a (set out 指将出发＝will start one's journey) 20. b

10

Ⅰ. 1. He certainly does. He is going to ask for an explanation.

2. They certainly do. They are going to leave.

3. She certainly does. She is going to write to him.

4. They certainly do. They are going to move to a new house.

5. They certainly do. They are going to persuade him.

Ⅱ. 1. b　2. b　3. c　4. d　5. b　6. b

7. c　8. d　9. a　10. a　11. b　12. b

13. c　14. d　15. d

Ⅲ. I'm going to India.

11

Ⅰ. 1. No, we shall be playing it tomorrow.

2. No, he will be correcting them tomorrow.

3. No, they will be giving a performance tomorrow.

4. No, she will be ironing them tomorrow.

5. No, I shall be writing to her tomorrow.

Ⅱ. 1. b　2. a　3. d　4. c　5. d　6. d

7. c　8. b　9. c　10. d　11. a　12. c

13. d　14. c　15. b(have a difficult time+ing,不用 to)

12

1. b　2. a　3. a　4. b　5. d　6. a(the

public 可以用单数谓语或复数谓语） 7. c 8. b
9. d 10. a(necessary 不以人作主语） 11. c
12. a 13. c 14. b 15. c

13

Ⅰ. 1. might have arrived 2. might have visited 3. may return 4. has passed 5. has written to 6. has gone to

Ⅱ. 1. might have telephoned, did 2. may(might) arrive, will 3. might have left, did 4. may (might) go, will 5. might have written, did

Ⅲ. 1. d 2. a 3. a 4. d 5. a 6. b
7. d 8. b 9. b 10. a

14

Ⅰ. 1. has already done his homework 2. have already taken a holiday 3. have already had my breakfast 4. have already turned on the radio 5. has already left

Ⅱ. 1. d 2. c 3. a 4. d 5. b 6. d
7. a 8. c 9. d 10. b 11. d 12. b
13. b (abroad 为副词，前面一般不用介词，但 return from 例外） 14. d 15. d 16. a 17. d 18. c
19. b 20. a(注意：ago 只用在简单过去式）

15

Ⅰ. 1. He has just recovered from his illness.

2. I've just found those old photographs.

3. She has just come to Shanghai.

4. It has just started to rain.

5. He has just turned the light out.

Ⅱ. 1. b 2. a 3. b 4. b 5. c 6. d
7. a 8. d 9. d, d

Ⅲ. had（不用 bought，因为 bought 是一时结束性动词，无延续性状态）

16

Ⅰ. 1. settled, has been 2. caught, has been 3. left, have done 4. believe 5. to have 6. had
7. affected 8. returned 9. haven't had any
10. moved, have had

Ⅱ. 1. a 2. d 3. d 4. d 5. c 6. a
7. b 8. d 9. c 10. c

Ⅲ. had, have done, have spent

17

Ⅰ. 1. He has been studying maths since 1981.

2. I have been listening to the radio since you went out.

3. They have been working harder since they failed the exam.

4. He has been working in that office for six months.

5. I have been going to the cinema for years.

6. She has been doing morning exercises every day for

ten years.

7. He has been fishing in this river since lunchtime.
8. I have been teaching this lesson for ten minutes.
9. He has been teaching that class since Christmas.
10. She has been eating sweets since she gave up smoking.

Ⅱ. 1. b 2. b 3. a 4. a 5. c 6. d 7. b 8. c 9. d 10. c 11. c 12. d 13. c 14. d 15. d

18

Ⅰ. 1. had finished 2. took 3. had begun 4. arrived, had left 5. had written 6. had explained 7. bought, had borrowed 8. had not known 9. did not see 10. had not agreed 11. had not noticed 12. did not notice 13. didn't enjoy 14. came 15. had eaten

Ⅱ. 1. a 2. b 3. c 4. c 5. c 6. d 7. b 8. b 9. a 10. c

19

1. b 2. b 3. a 4. b 5. d 6. c 7. a 8. c 9. a 10. a 11. a 12. b 13. d 14. b 15. d

20

1. c 2. c 3. c 4. b 5. b 6. d

7. d　8. a　9. c　10. c　11. b　12. b
13. b　14. a　15. a

21

1. d　2. d　3. d　4. b　5. a　6. b
7. d　8. a　9. d　10. d

22

Ⅰ. 1. b　2. d　3. b　4. b　5. b　6. b
7. d　8. c　9. b　10. c

Ⅱ. 1. They will have built this railway tunnel in eight years' time.
2. By the end of next year, they will have been building (working on) this railway tunnel for three years.
3. We shan't (won't) be able to enter (get into) the museum until we have got the tickets.
4. He has the ability to solve the problem and she has not.

23

1. a　2. b　3. d　4. b (recently 用在完成式=lately,用在过去式则=not long ago)　5. d　6. had (bought 不能用。因为 buy 这个词无延续性,要用 buy 的状态用词 have,才能同 for many years 相连)　7. c　8. d (代词必须放在副词 down 之前)　9. d　10. d (be allowed *to*...and *to*...)

24

1. d 2. d 3. b 4. b 5. b 6. d
7. d 8. a 9. c 10. c 11. d 12. d
13. c 14. d 15. c

25

1. c 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. d 6. b
7. d 8. a 9. c 10. c 11. d 12. b
13. a 14. c 15. d

26

Ⅰ. 1. b 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. c 6. a
7. b 8. d 9. c 10. b

Ⅱ. 1. is said to be a big city 2. is said to be a shop
3. is said that he has gone to Japan 4. are said to be American students 5. has refused to have the tree cut down

27

1. b 2. d 3. b 4. d 5. a 6. b
7. d 8. c 9. d 10. a

28

1. a 2. d 3. b 4. d 5. b 6. c
7. d 8. b 9. d(这个 not 是省略形式＝you need not) 10. d

29

1. b 2. c 3. b 4. a 5. b 6. a
7. b 8. d 9. a 10. a 11. b 12. d
13. a 14. a 15. d

30

1. b 2. a 3. c 4. d 5. c 6. a
7. d 8. d 9. a 10. d 11. d 12. b
13. d 14. d 15. a 16. b 17. a
18. b

31

1. c 2. d 3. b 4. b 5. b 6. d
7. d 8. c 9. b 10. d

32

1. d 2. d 3. d (cake 作泛指时，为不可数名词)
4. b 5. a 6. c 7. d 8. c 9. b

10. d　　11. d（比较级不单独使用，不用无比较对象的孤立比较级，所以 a 不对）　　12. d　　13. d　　14. d　　15. d

33

Ⅰ. 1. d　　2. a　　3. b　　4. d　　5. b　　6. d
7. a　　8. c　　9. b　　10. d　　11. d　　12. d
13. d　　14. d　　15. b

Ⅱ. 1. 她同她的姊姊一样美丽。　　2. 阳光和新鲜空气同样必需。
3. 住在这里说不定要花许多钱，你不认为是这样吗？
4. 关于这个问题他们谈了很多。　　5. 今天她好多了。
6. 她胖多了。　　7. 这些天来我们时常（多次）见到他。
8. 我问他许多问题，但是有不少问题他没有回答。
9. 10. 译文见1. 2。

34

1. b　　2. c　　3. d　　4. c　　5. b　　6. a
7. d　　8. a　　9. d　　10. c

35

1. a　　2. d　　3. c　　4. b（追述）　　5. c
6. c　　7. d（当时转述）　　8. d　　9. d（转述）
10. a（追述）　　11. d（追述）　　12. b（追述）
13. b　　14. d　　15. c　　16. d

36

1. b　2. a　3. a　4. d (“除了”,用在句首时不用 Except)　5. a　6. b　7. a　8. a　9. b　10. d　11. a　12. b (says,在间引中用现在式,said 则不同)　13. must (过去式用 had to)　14. b　15. d　16. c　17. d　18. a　19. d　20. b

37

1. b　2. b　3. a　4. d　5. c　6. d
7. a　8. a　9. b　10. a　11. a　12. d
13. a　14. b　15. b　16. a　17. a
18. a　19. c　20. a

38

Ⅰ. 1. seeing　2. to come (coming)　3. see　4. stealing　5. working　6. ironing (to be ironed)　7. to leave　8. to argue (arguing)　9. knocking　10. waiting　11. to rain　12. working (believe in 后跟动名词解释为“主张”)　13. being taught (believe in 后跟名词解释为“信奉”)　14. being criticised　15. speaking　16. to playing

Ⅱ. 1. b　2. d　3. b　4. b　5. b　6. a
7. a　8. c　9. d　10. d

39

Ⅰ. 1. taking　2. your talking　3. waiting　4. writing　5. my interrupting　6. crying　7. your giving　8. talking　9. talking big　10. seeing　11. doing　12. travelling　13. playing　14. opening　15. speaking　16. my opening　17. following　18. her talking　19. coming(有时 from 可以省略,但必须后随动名词)　20. to worry(指这次)

Ⅱ. (busy) sawing, (stopped) sawing

40

1. b　2. d　3. a　4. a　5. d　6. d
7. d　8. c　9. d　10. a　11. d　12. d
13. d　14. b　15. d

41

Ⅰ. 1. will get　2. rains　3. pay　4. will never pass　5. is　6. enjoys　7. will look　8. want　9. listen　10. don't hurry

Ⅱ. 1. d　2. a (welcome 作为形容词)　3. a (人用 enjoy,主语不是人,用 it,则用 please)　4. c　5. d　6. d　7. d　8. b　9. a (if you will=will you please)　10. d　11. c　12. c　13. d　14. d　15. d

42

1. won 2. lost 3. were 4. tries 5. will burn 6. would have to 7. could 8. wouldn't be 9. were 10. don't apologize 11. knew 12. were 13. might 14. tried 15. seated myself(was seated) 16. didn't hear 17. would 18. don't 19. went 20. wouldn't recognize 21. went 22. were 23. asked 24. were 25. knew

43

Ⅰ. 1. wouldn't have made 2. had been 3. could have made (had been able to make) 4. would have gone 5. could have got 6. couldn't have been able to understand 7. had tried 8. could have heard (had been able to hear) 9. had had 10. known, would have been

Ⅱ. 1. d 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. c 6. d 7. d 8. d 9. b 10. d

44

Ⅰ. 1. b 2. d 3. a 4. a 5. d (but for＝要不是因为＝had it not been for, if it had not been for) 6. a 7. d

Ⅱ. 8. wouldn't have been injured 9. have been saved

10. will find 11. he given 12. is forbidden 13. ran 14. wouldn't have died 15. had worked 16. asked 17. to change 18. to get 19. had been 20. will go

45

1. to	2. for	3. to, for	4. to
5. to	6. for	7. to, at	8. at
9. with	10. with	11. to, for	12. at
13. for	14. with	15. to	16. To
17. with, to	18. to	19. for	20. to
21. for	22. to	23. to, with	24. to
25. to	26. at	27. at (on)	28. with
29. for	30. with	31. from	32. on
33. in	34. on	35. from	36. on, in
37. on	38. from	39. of	40. in
41. on	42. from	43. on, of	44. on
45. of	46. of	47. of	48. of
49. from	50. in	51. on	52. from
53. on	54. in	55. from	56. on
57. on	58. of	59. in	60. on
61. on	62. in	63. of	64. on
65. of	66. in	67. in	68. from
69. from	70. of	71. of	72. on
73. of	74. in	75. in (=He takes a delight in...)	

46

Ⅰ. 1. of　2. from　3. on, to　4. to　5. to, with　6. to　7. of　8. of　9. for　10. on　11. about　12. at (shocked 过去分词作形容词用)　13. of　14. to　15. to　16. of　17. of　18. of　19. at　20. of　21. in, at　22. in　23. to, about　24. with　25. to　26. at　27. to, for　28. in　29. to　30. of　31. on, about (of)　32. with　33. at　34. of　35. to, to　36. with　37. to　38. of　39. for　40. at　41. with　42. for　43. of　44. to　45. about

Ⅱ. d. (being poor...having)

47

1. a　2. the, the　3. The　4. ×　5. ×
6. the, the　7. the　8. the　9. ×
10. a　11. a, an　12. the　13. ×, ×
14. an, an　15. an, a　16. ×
17. the　18. the　19. a　20. a, ×　21. ×
22. ×　23. the　24. ×, ×　25. the
26. ×　27. the　28. the　29. the　30. the

48

1. c　2. d　3. a　(这是介词+动名词)　4. b

5. d　6. d　7. d　8. b　9. b　10. d（c. 意思讲不通，但结构无误）

49

1. Injured　2. Led　3. Invited　4. Moved
5. affected　6. Carried on　7. heated
8. Inspired　9. Elected　10. Posted

50

1. b（both...and＝既…又）　2. c　3. d（分词 working 作定语）　4. a　5. b　6. d　7. d
8. d　9. c　10. a

51

1. d　2. b　3. c　4. d　5. a　6. b
7. d　8. a　9. c　10. c　11. c　12. d
13. b　14. b　15. c

52

1. a　2. d　3. b　4. c　5. c　6. d
7. b　8. a　9. d　10. d

53

1. d　2. b　3. d　4. c　5. d　6. b

7. c　8. c　9. c　10. d　11. c　12. d
13. d　14. d　15. c

54

1. c　2. a　3. c　4. a　5. d　6. b
7. a　8. d　9. b　10. b　11. c　12. c
13. d　14. d　15. b

55

1. d　2. d　3. c　4. d　5. b　6. d
7. b　8. c　9. b（为什么用 b，参阅 I.【讲解】★概念部分的解释）　10. a

56

1. a　2. a　3. b　4. d　5. c　6. d
7. d　8. b　9. b　10. a

57

Ⅰ. 1. had　2. didn't　3. were　4. could
5. had　6. hadn't　7. didn't　8. had
9. had（有）　10. could have been

Ⅱ. 1. would pay　2. would go　3. would stop
4. didn't smoke　5. knew　6. had（有）　7. could have been　8. were　9. were　10. would stay

Ⅲ. were (c)

58

1. as 2. than 3. be alive 4. than
5. came 6. remained 7. walk 8. stopped
9. do 10. than 11. didn't do 12. live
13. have gone 14. didn't do 15. rather not wait here 16. rather she didn't go there 17. rather she did more reading 18. to have gone to... 19. prefer 20. prefer to use, (rather use)

59

1. You had better have gone to the theare last night.
2. Hadn't we better wait till the rain stops?
3. You'd better tell your students not to overuse "had best".
4. You'd better go earlier.
5. Hadn't you better hurry up, it's getting dark.
6. You'd better do it yourself. You had better have done it yesterday.
7. You'd better stay home and read tonight.
8. I'd rather stay home and read tonight.
9. You'd better have your hair cut.
10. Hadn't we better discuss the plan before the meeting begins?

60

1. d 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. c 6. b
7. c 8. a 9. d 10. c 11. b 12. b
13. a 14. a 15. d